

ARABIC GRAMMAR

PARADIGMS, LITTERATURE, CHRESTOMATHY

AND

GLOSSARY

BY

DR. A. SOGIN,

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TUBINGEN.



CARLSRUHE AND LEIPSIC
H. REUTHER

LONDON	NEW YORK	PARIS
WILLIAMS & NOBGEAT	B. WESTERMANN & COMP.	MAISONNEUVE & CIE.
14 HENRIETTA STREET COVENT GARDEN.	888, BROADWAY.	25, QUAI VOLTAIRE.

1885.

All rights reserved.

CONTENTS.

GRAMMAR.

I. LETTERS AND SOUNDS (§ 1—10).

	Page
§ 1. Consonants	3
§ 2. Long Vowels	6
§ 3. Short Vowels, Nunation, Gézma	8
§ 4. Hamza	9
§ 5. Teshdid	10
§ 6. Wasla	12
§ 7. Medda	15
§ 9. The Tone	16
§ 10. Numerals and Abbreviations	17

II. ETYMOLOGY (§ 11—71).

Chap. I. The Pronoun (§ 11—14).

§ 11. Pronomina personalia	18
§ 12. Pronomina demonstrativa	20
§ 13. Pronomina relativa	22
§ 14. Pronomina interrogativa	23

Chap. II. The Verb (§ 15—46).

§ 15. The root form	23
§ 16. General view of the derived stems	24
§ 17. I. Stem	25
§ 18. II. Stem	25

	Page
§ 19. III. Stem	26
§ 20. IV. Stem	26
§ 21. V. Stem	27
§ 22. VI. Stem	27
§ 23. VII. Stem	27
§ 24. VIII. Stem	28
§ 25. IX. and XI. Stem	28
§ 26. X. Stem	29
§ 27. The quadriliteral Verb	29
§ 28. The Passive	30
§ 29. Tenses	30
§ 30. Moods	31
§ 31. Imperative	31
§ 32. The Persons	32
§ 33. Participles	33
§ 34. Infinitive	33
§ 35. Verba mediæ geminatæ	34
§ 36. Verba hamzata	36
§ 37. Weak Verbs	38
§ 38. Verba primæ و and ي	38
§ 39. Verba mediæ و and ي	39
§ 40. Verba tertîæ و and ي	41
§ 41. Doubly weak Verbs	45
§ 42. The Verb كَيْسَ	46
§ 43. Verbs of praise and blame	46
§ 44. Forms of admiration	46
§ 45. The Verb with Pronominal suffixes	47
§ 46. Sign of the Accusative	47

Chap. III. The Noun (§ 47—65).

a. FORMATION OF NOUNS.

§ 47. Derived Nouns, Intensive forms	48
§ 48. Nomina loci, instrumenti, speciei	50
§ 49. Nomina relativa and deminutiva	51

b. GENDER OF NOUNS.

	Page
§ 50. Masculine and feminine Gender	52
§ 51. Formation of the Feminine	52

c. INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

§ 52. Number and Case	54
§ 53. Formation of the Dual and Plural	54
§ 54. Nomina triptota and diptota	55
§ 55. Nomina diptota	56
§ 56. Inflection of the determinate Nouns	57
§ 57. Abbreviation of Dual and Plural Nouns	58
§ 58. Noun with Pronominal suffixes	59
§ 59. Vocalic additions	59
§ 60. Proper names connected with ابن	60
§ 61. Vocative	60
§ 62. Broken Plurals	61
§ 63. List of the chief forms	61
§ 64. Broken Plurals of Nouns with more than three radicals	65
§ 65. Irregular Nouns	66

Chap. IV. Numerals (§ 66—68).

§ 66. Cardinals	69
§ 67. Connection of Numbers with the thing numbered	71
§ 68. Ordinal numbers and fractions	72

Chap. V. Particles (§ 69—71).

§ 69. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions	73
§ 70. Inseparable Particles	73
§ 71. Prepositions and Conjunctions with Suffixes	74

III. SYNTAX § (72—104).

Chap. I. Tenses.

§ 72. Perfect and Imperfect	76
§ 73. Usage of the Perfect	76

	Page
§ 74. Usage of the Imperfect	76
§ 75. Subjunctive	79
§ 76. Jussive	79
§ 77. Participle	80

Chap. II. Government of the Verb.

§ 78. Accusative	81
§ 79. Object, double Object	81
§ 80. Absolute Object	82
§ 81. Accusative as Predicate	82
§ 82. Accusative of nearer definition	83

Chap. III. Government of the Noun.

§ 83. Syntactical additions to the Noun	84
§ 84. Determination	85
§ 85. Apposition	85
§ 86. Qualification	86
§ 87. Genitive Relation	86
§ 88. Special kinds of Genitive	87
§ 89. The Genitive inseparable	89

Chap. IV. The simple sentence.

§ 90. Distinction of Nominal and Verbal sentences	89
§ 91. The Verb in a Verbal sentence	90
§ 92. The Predicate in a Nominal sentence	91
§ 93. Connection between Subject and Predicate	92
§ 94. Peculiarities of the same	93
§ 95. The Particles 'inna and 'anna	93
§ 96. Dependent sentences	95
§ 97. Asyndeton	95
§ 98. Exceptive Particle	96

Chap. V. Compound sentences.

§ 99. Relative sentences	96
§ 100. Sentences denoting a state or condition	99

	Page
§ 101. Temporal sentences	99
§ 102. Conditional sentences with the Perfect	100
§ 103. Conditional sentences with the Jussive	100
§ 104. The Particle fa	101

PARADIGMS.

Strong trilateral Verb Act. I.	2
Strong trilateral Verb Pass. I.	4
Quadrilateral Verb, derived Stems	5
Strong trilateral Verb, derived Stems	6
Verbum mediæ geminatæ Act. I	8
Verbum mediæ geminatæ Pass. I	9
Verbum mediæ geminatæ, derived Stems	10
Verbum primæ radicalis و and ی	11
Verbum mediæ radicalis و Act. I	12
Verbum mediæ radicalis ی Act. I	13
Verbum mediæ radicalis و or ی Pass. I	14
Verbum mediæ radicalis و and ی, derived Stems	15
Verbum tertiæ radicalis و (فَعَلَ) Act. I	16
Verbum tertiæ radicalis ی (فَعَلَ) Act. I	17
Verbum tertiæ radicalis و or ی (فَعَلَ) Act. I	18
Verbum tertiæ radicalis و or ی Pass. I	19
Verbum tertiæ radicalis و or ی; derived Stems	20

Nomen generis masculini	22
Nomen generis feminini	23
Nouns in "in" and "an"	24
Noun with Personal suffixes	25

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

History of literature	29
Chrestomathies	30
Grammars	31

	Page
Lexicography	33
Koran and Islam	36
History	37
Geography	40
Poetry	42
Miscellaneous	43

CHRESTOMATHY.

A. For translation into English:	
I. The history of Queen Bilkis from the prophetic legends of Ta'labi	49
II. Extracts from the biographies of the first three Chalifs from the "golden meadows" of Masudi	
B. For translation into Arabic	

GLOSSARY.

To part A of the Chrestomathy	109
To part B of the Chrestomathy	167

G R A M M A R.

PART I.

CHARACTERS AND SOUNDS.

§ 1 a. *The Consonants.* The Arabs originally used the Syriac character and the Syriac alphabet, in which the characters are in the same order, as in the Hebrew alphabet. Remains of this older order are still preserved in the numerical values of the letters (cf. the table). In later times the letters were seldom used as numerals. By means of diacritical points the Arabs early distinguished a number of sounds which in that older alphabet were not separated from one another. And many characters became by abbreviation so similar to one another that such diacritical marks were necessary to distinguish them. These similar forms were afterwards placed next one another in the alphabet. Thus the letters stand now in the following order which is tolerably general. The alphabet consists of 28 consonants of the following forms. These are written and read from right to left,

Names	Figures				Value			
	unconnected	connected only with the preceding	connected on both sides	connected only with the following	Pronunciation	Transcription	Numerical value	Hebrew
1 ^ا اَلِف * Alif	ا	ل	—	—	cf. § 2 and 4		1	א
2 ^ب بَا Bā	ب	ب	ب	ب	b	b	2	ב
3 ^ت تَا Tā	ت	ت	ت	ت	t	t	400	ת
4 ^ث ثَا Thā	ث	ث	ث	ث	English hard th as in <i>thing</i>	t	500	
5 ^ج جِيم Jīm	ج	ج	ج	ج	orig. g hard; later g as in Italian <i>giorno</i> ; English j	g	3	ג
6 ^ح حَا Hhā	ح	ح	ح	ح		h	8	ח
7 ^خ خَا Chā	خ	خ	خ	خ	German hard ch; Scotch ch in <i>loch</i>	h	600	
8 ^د دَال Dāl	د	د	—	—	d on the teeth	d	4	
9 ^ذ ذَال Dhāl	ذ	ذ	—	—	English soft th as in <i>this</i>	d	700	ד
10 ^ر رَا Rā	ر	ر	—	—	dental r	r	200	ר
11 ^ز زَا Zā	ز	ز	—	—	weak vocalic s, like French and English z	z	7	ז
12 ^س سِين Sīn	س	س	س	س		s	60	ס
13 ^ش شِين Shīn	ش	ش	ش	ش	German sch English sh	š	300	ש

* In such technical terms it is usual to leave the ending *s* i.e. *un* (cf. § 3b) unpronounced after the fashion of modern Arabic.

Names	Figures				Value		
	unconnected	connected only with the preceding	connected on both sides	connected only with the following	Pronunciation	Transcription	Numerical value
14 صَادُ Ṣād	ص	ص	ص	ص	emphatic s	s	90
15 ضَادُ Ḍād	ض	ض	ض	ض	upper palatal d	ḍ	800
16 طَاءُ Ṭā	ط	ط	ظ	ظ	emphatic t	ṭ	9
17 ظَاءُ Ḍā	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	weak emphatic s	z	900
18 عَيْنُ ʿAin	ع	ع	ع	ع	arises by squeezing the violently compressed Glottis	ʿ	70
19 غَيْنُ Ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ		ḡ	1000
20 فَاءُ Fā	ف	ف	ف	ف	f	f	80
21 قَافُ Kāf	ق	ق	ق	ق	deep emphatic k	ḳ	100
22 كَافُ Kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k	k	20
23 لَامُ Lām	ل	ل	ل	ل	l	l	30
24 مِيمُ Mīm	م	م	م	م	m	m	40
25 نُونُ Nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	n	50
26 هَاءُ Hā	ه	ه	ه	ه	h	h	5
27 وَاوُ Wāw	و	و	—	—	English w	w	6
28 يَاءُ Yā	ي	ي	ي	ي	y	y	10

and are in part connected with one another, in part left unconnected, as the table on pages 4 and 5 shows.

b. When \mathfrak{z} (No. 26) standing at the end of a word denotes the feminine termination, two dots are placed over it, to show that it is to be pronounced like \mathfrak{t} (No. 3); thus \mathfrak{z} .

c. Certain letters are very frequently, especially at the beginning of words, placed not alongside one another, but above one another: this is the case with the characters \mathfrak{c} \mathfrak{h} \mathfrak{x} (Nos. 5—7), e. g. \mathfrak{c} instead of \mathfrak{b} , \mathfrak{h} instead of \mathfrak{j} , \mathfrak{x} instead of \mathfrak{e} etc. Instead of \mathfrak{l} (Nos. 23 and 1) usually \mathfrak{y} or \mathfrak{v} is written; this connection is so frequent that the character is even reckoned by the Arabs as an extra letter with the name of Lām-Alif.

§ 2 a. *The vowel signs.* Originally the Arabs had signs only for the long vowels \bar{a} , \bar{i} , \bar{u} , and the diphthongs au , ai the second part of which they treated as a consonant; the signs were \mathfrak{a} (No. 1) for \bar{a} , \mathfrak{u} (No. 27) for \bar{u} and (after a for) au , \mathfrak{i} (No. 28) for \bar{i} and (after a for) ai . These signs were regarded as *quiescent*; the sign of a consonant's being without a vowel (cf. § 3 c) was however in later times added only to \mathfrak{u} and \mathfrak{i} in those cases, where they repre-

sented the diphthongs. Examples: قَالَ *kāla*, سِيرَ *sīra*, كُولِي *kūlī*, بَيْعَ *bai'un* (cf. § 3 b), ذَوْمَ *naumun*.

b. In the oldest writing the *ā* is not in all cases represented by ا, but is left sometimes unrepresented. This non-representation is the rule in a series of very common words; generally however in such cases a perpendicular stroke is placed over the consonant which is to be pronounced with long *ā*; e. g. هَذَا *hādā* (instead of هَذَا) *hādā*, اَللَّهُ *allāhu* (see § 5), اَلرَّحْمَنُ *ar-rahmānu*. Frequently however in our editions only — is printed in such cases for the *ā*, e. g. هَذَا.

c. In some few words و, after an *a* denotes, not the pronunciation *au* but *ā*, probably an originally indistinct *ā*; in this case also the perpendicular stroke is usual, e. g. حَيَاةٌ *hayātun* "life" (on the other hand the same word with suffixes is written with ا, حَيَاتُهُ *hayātuhu* "his life").

d. As the final letter ي likewise in many words serves to denote a long *ā*; in such cases it (like و in c) does not receive the sign of being non-vocalic (§ 3 c), e. g. رَمَى (رَمَى) *ramā*; with suffix رَمَاهُ *ramāhu*.

REM. Instead of دُنْيَا *dunyā*, as it ought to be written according to the rules for the formation

of nouns § 51 b, دُنْيَا is written, to avoid two ي's coming together.

e. Sometimes an | is added after a final ū or au, without affecting the pronunciation, e. g. كَتَبُوا *katabū*, رَمَوْا *ramau*; this | was originally used in the MSS. to separate a final و from the following word.

§ 3 a. *The short vowels* were originally quite unrepresented (many books, especially those printed in the east, are printed without any vowels at all); in later times the following signs were used for the short vowels (and, in connection with the signs mentioned in § 2, for the long vowels also):

1) فَتْحَة Fatha (or فَتْح Fath) َ for the vowel *a* (to be pronounced *ä* or *e* in certain cases), e. g. قَتَلَ *katala*, قَالَ *kāla*.

2) كَسْرَة Kesra (or كَسْر Kesr) ِ for the vowel *i*, e. g. غَضِبَ *gadiba*, يَبِيعُ *yabī'u*.

3) ضَمَة Damma (or ضَم Damm) ُ for the vowel *u*, e. g. يَكْتُبُ *yaktubu*; يَفُوتُ *yafūtu*.

b. When these signs for the short vowels are doubled at the end of a word, they are to be pronounced with a final *n* (Nunation, Arabic تَنْوِين

Tanwīn), e. g. شَمْسٍ *šamsin*, رَجُلٌ *raǧulun*; an ʾ, which has no influence on the pronunciation is added as an outward sign to the nunation *an*, e. g. مَالًا *mālan*; this ʾ is left only in those cases where the nunation is affixed to the fem. ending ʾ (cf. above § 1 a) e. g. مَرْكُوبَةً *markūbatan*, or where an ʾ, or in its stead a ى quiescing in *a*, already stands at the end of a word, e. g. رِبًّا *riban*, هُدًى *hudan* (§ 2 c); likewise sometimes after ʾ (§ 4).

c. The fact of a consonant's not being accompanied by a vowel is shown by جَزْمَةٌ *Ǧezma*, also called سُكُونٌ *Sukūn* ["rest"], e. g. سَافَرْتُ *sāfartu*, مَشَيْتَ *mašaita* (cf. § 2). On the omission of this sign cf. § 5 a. A consonant, which is to be pronounced without a vowel, is called "quiescent".

§ 4. *Hamza*. The sign هَمْزَةٌ *Hamza* ʾ (the form of which has arisen from ع 'Ain) is peculiar to the Arabic writing as a further consonantal sign. It denotes the cutting off of the stream of breath, which can precede or follow a vowel; it corresponds therefore at the beginning of a syllable to the Greek spiritus lenis. In the transliteration we denote Hamza by ʾ; at the beginning of a word we often leave it unrepresented.

In most cases an *ʾ* Alif occurs as the bearer of this Hamza; the Alif has in this case an essentially different function from that noted in § 2. When an *i* sound follows, the sign ٓ is placed under the *ʾ*. Examples: *أَمْرٌ* 'amrun, *إِبِلٌ* 'ibilun, *أُمَمٌ* 'umamun; *سَأَلَ* sa'ala, *رَأْسٌ* ra'-sun; *إِكْرَأْ* ik-ra', *لَأَمَّ* la'-a-ma. In the last three instances Hamza closes the syllable; in the last case the following syllable again begins with Hamza.

b. Before or after an *i* or *u* sound the letters و and ي occur in most cases as the bearer of Hamza (in such a case ي is without the two points), e. g. *بَوْسٌ* bā'usa, *يُوتَرُ* yu'taru, *يُؤَاتَرُ* yu'ātaru; *جِئْتُ* ġi'ta, *صَيْبٌ* ša'iba, *يُبَارِي* yubārī'u.

c. After a long vowel, as also in most cases after Sukūn, Hamza has usually no bearer, but is placed on or above the line, e. g. *إِرْدَاؤُنْ* irḍā'un, *بَرٌّ* bar'un, *مَمْلُوءَةٌ* mamlū'atun; *حَاطِيَةٌ* haṭī'atun.

§ 5. *Tešdīd*. a. The sharpened pronunciation of a consonant is shown by the sign of reduplication ّ, called *Tešdīd* or *Šedd* (the sign ّ is borrowed from the initial of this word), e. g. *سَبَّ* sabba, *تَرَحَّلْ* tarahḥulun. This reduplication of a consonant

is either (as in the above examples) due to the character of a nominal or verbal form, or is the result of assimilation. In the latter case the consonant assimilated to the following one is for the most part expressed in writing, but does not receive the sign of vowellessness—as it really no longer exists in respect of the pronunciation—, e. g. *أَرَدْتُ* to be pronounced 'arattu, *أَخَذْتُ* *aḥatti*.

b. This assimilation (which however in the examples just given is not always represented in writing) takes place always with the *l* of the article *أَلْ*, when it stands before the consonants *ذ, د, ث, ت*, when it stands before the consonants *ن, ل, ظ, ط, ض, ص, ش, س, ز, ر* (i. e. before dentals, sibilants and *r, l, n*) e. g. *التَّاجِرُ* *ettāgīru*, *الْثَّلْجُ* *ettalǧu*, *الشَّمْسُ* *eššamsu* (the sun), but *القَمَرُ* *elqamaru* (the moon). On account of the antithesis represented by the last two stereotyped examples, these are called solar letters in opposition to the lunar letters, with which the *l* of the article cannot be assimilated.

c. The words *مِنْ* *min*, *عَنْ* *'an*, *أَنْ* *'an* (and *إِنْ* *'in*) are for the most part written as one with some short words beginning with *م* or *ل*, and then assimilate

their final ن *n* to the following sound, e. g. مِمَّا *mimmā* from مَا مِنْ *min mā*, أَلَّا *'allā* from لَا أَنْ *'an lā*.

§ 6. *Waṣla* ~. a. There are a great number of words in Arabic, which begin with an easily vanishing vowel, succeeded by a quiescent consonant, or more properly which begin with the quiescent consonant itself. In such cases the vowel or the helping vowel (e. g. أُكْتُلْ *ukṭul* instead of كُتْلْ *ḵṭul*) regularly falls away after another word. As a sign of this elision وَصَلَةٌ *waṣla* ~ (from ص) is placed over the l, which is the bearer of the vowel sign, e. g. بِنْتُ الْوَزِيرِ *bintulwazīri*; the two words so joined must then be pronounced in close connection. Such an Alif bearing *Waṣla* is called a connective Alif, in opposition to a disjunctive Alif, i. e. an Alif with Hamza (cf. § 4).

b. When a connective Alif stands at the beginning of a paragraph, it is pronounced as a full vowel, but in writing only the corresponding vowel sign may be placed on the Alif, never Hamza, e. g. الرَّسُولُ *arrasūlu*, أُخْرِجْ *uhruġ* alongside of قَالَ أَخْرَجْ to be pronounced *ḵālahruġ*.

c. In the latter example the division of syllables now is *ḥā-lah-ruḡ*. If the vowel preceding a connective Alif is long, it is pronounced short in the now closed syllable, e. g. فِي الْفُلْكِ prop. *fī-lfulki*, now however forming the syllables *fil-ful-ki*; likewise رَضِيَ اللَّهُ *riḍā-llāhi* = *ri-ḍal-lā-hi*; دَبَّحُوا آلَ لُؤْلُؤٍ (§ 2 e) *da-ba-ḥul-wazza*.

d. If the word before a connective Alif ends in a vowelless (quiescent) consonant, it receives a helping vowel. The most usual helping vowel (in such a case is *i*, e. g. ضَرَبَتِ الْعَبْدَ *ḍarabati-l'abda* (instead of ضَرَبَتْ). Sometimes original vowels return, e. g. هُمُ الْكَافِرُونَ *humu-lkāfirūna*; the first word is in other cases pronounced هُمْ *hum*, but was originally pronounced *humū*. Sometimes the same vowel is chosen as auxiliary, as stands under the initial Alif when unconnected, e. g. اِسْتَقْبَالَ connected with the article اَلْ = اَلِاسْتَقْبَالَ *alistikḥbālu* with helping vowel *i*. — The nunation (§ 3 b) also is treated as ending in a consonant; in this case it is most usual to add an *i*, e. g. رَجُلٌ اِسْمُهُ = رَجُلُنِ اِسْمُهُ *raḡuluni-smuhu*.

REM. The preposition عَنْ „away from“ is changed to عَنِ, and the preposition مِنْ “from” to مِّنْ before a connective Alif; before the article however it is changed to مِّنَ.

e. The cases too, in which a word ends in a so-called diphthong (cf. § 2), are subject to the same rule, viz. that a quiescent final consonant must receive a helping vowel before a connective Alif; this helping vowel is *u* or *i* corresponding to و or ي, e. g. مُصْطَفَوُ اللَّهِ *muṣṭafawu-llāhi* instead of مُصْطَفَى اللَّهِ, رِجْلَى الْبَقَرَةِ *riġṭayī-lbaḳarati* instead of رِجْلَى الْبَقَرَةِ (Likewise with the ending ُوا § 2 e).

f. In some cases the connective Alif is left out altogether in writing:

1) with the article آل, when the particles ل *li* or لَ *la* precede, e. g. لِلْحَاقِّ *liḥḥaqqi* for إِلَ الْحَاقِّ, لَلْمَجْدُ *lalmaġdu* for لَ الْمَجْدُ.

2) with the word ابْنُ “son”, when it is in apposition to the proper name of the son, and governs the name of the father, e. g. مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ *muslimu-bnu-lwalīdi*. Muslim son of al-Walid. At the beginning of a line however ابْنُ is written in such a case.

3) with the word ^{اِسْمُ} *ismun* "name" after the preposition ^{بِ} *bi*, e. g. ^{بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ} *bismi-llāhi* "in the name of God".

§ 7. *Medda*. a. In Arabic two Alifs cannot stand together. When this would happen, only one Alif is written with the sign ^{مَدَّة} *Medda* or *Medd* ~ placed over it. This sign ~ has arisen from ^{مَد} *Medd*. At the beginning of a word or syllable *Medda* has at the same time the value of *Hamza*; the sign *Fath* is also omitted, e. g. ^{اَكِلُ} *ākilun* for ^{اَكِلُ} *ākīlun*, ^{كُرْاٰنُ} *kur'ānun* for ^{كُرْاٰنُ} *kur'ānun*; likewise ^{اٰمَنَ} *āmāna* for ^{اٰمَنَ} *āman*, as the *Hamza* of the second Alif is lost after the first.

REM. ^{رَاٰ} *ra'ā* "he has seen", for example becomes with suffixes according to § 2 e properly ^{رَاٰهُ} *ra'āhu*, but is written ^{رَاٰهُ}.

b. As a *Hamza* ^ا following a long ^ا *ā* is written on the line (§ 4 c) without an Alif as bearer, the Alif preceding such a *Hamza* receives *Medda* in most cases, though this *Medda* has no effect on the pronunciation of the word, e. g. ^{جَاا} *gā'a* for ^{جَاا} *gā'a*, ^{تَفَااٰلُوا} *tafā'ālū*; so also where ^و or ^ي act as bearers of *Hamza*, e. g. ^{اٰهَبَاٰهُ} *aḥibbā'uhu*, ^{كَاٰلُ} *kā'ilun*.

REM. Two و's also are not willingly written alongside one another (even if the former is merely a bearer of Hamza after § 4 c), e. g. جَاوُوا *ǧā'ū* is written جَاوُوا دَاوُوْدُ *dā'ūdu* (David) دَاوُوْدُ (often wrongly without Hamza, دَاوُوْدُ).

§ 8. *The Syllable.* Every syllable begins with a consonant. A short syllable consists of a consonant with a short vowel, e. g. the second syllable of مَاتَ *mā-tā*; a long syllable consists either 1) of a consonant and a long vowel, e. g. the syllable *mā* in the above example, or 2) of a consonant and a short vowel with a consonant following, e. g. both syllables of قَتَلَ *kat-lun* (likewise of مَوْتٌ *mau-tun*), or seldom 3) of a shut syllable with a long vowel, e. g. the first syllable of مَادَّةٌ *mād-da-tun*. Such a syllable can be called a doubly long syllable.

§ 9. *The tone.* The accent in Arabic is thrown forward till it meets a long syllable; when there is no long syllable, the accent is on the first syllable of the word; the final simple long syllable is not reckoned a long syllable for purposes of accentuation. Examples with short final syllables: ضَارَبَ *dāraba*, اسْتَنَكَرَ *istānkara*; examples with long final syllables: تَمَامْتُمْ *tamāmtumā*, فَارْدُنْ *fārdun*, مَمْلَكَةٌ *māmlakatun*.

Exceptions: A syllable with connective Alif (§ 6), as e. g. in *اِفْتَعَلَ* (cf. § 24), cannot bear the accent; it must therefore be pronounced *iftá'ala*; in like manner inseparable præpositive monosyllabic particles like *وَ*, *فَ* (cf. § 70) do not alter the accent, e. g. *فَمَشَى* *famášā*.

§ 10. *Signs for numbers and abbreviations.* The usual signs for the Arabic numerals are the following:

٠, ١, ٢, ٣, ٤, ٥, ٦, ٧, ٨, ٩
0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.

The tens, hundreds, &c. are written on the left of the units &c., e. g. ١٩ 19, ١٨٨٥ 1885.

Some of the most common abbreviations are:

عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ = *alaihi-ssalāmu* Peace be upon him!
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ = *ṣalla-llāhu 'alaihi wa-sallama* God be gracious to him and give him prosperity (of the prophet).

PART II.

ET Y M O L O G Y.

Chapter I.

The Pronoun.

§ 11. a. The *pronomina personalia* are either *separata* or *suffixa*. The *pronomina personalia separata* have the following forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	أَنَا	فَاحُنْ	
II. Pers.	{ <div> masc. أَنْتَ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div> <div> fem. أَنْتِ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div>	{ <div> أَنْتُمْ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div> <div> أَنْتِنَ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div>	أَنْتُمَا
III. Pers.	{ <div> masc. هُوَ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div> <div> هِيَ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div>	{ <div> هُمْ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div> <div> هُنَّ <div> <div></div> <div></div> <div></div> </div> </div>	هُمَا

In connection with وَ and ف (cf. § 70) the pronouns of the 3. Pers. sing. may lose their first vowel
e. g. فَهِيَ, وَهُوَ.

b. The *pronomina personalia suffixa* which in connection with a noun express a genitive, and in connection with a verb express an accusative, are as follows:

		Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	{ with the Noun	—ي		
	{ with the Verb	—ني	—نا	
II. Pers.	{ masc.	—كَ	{ —كُمْ —كُنْ }	—كُمَا
	{ fem.	—كِ		
III. Pers.	{ masc.	—هُ	{ —هُمْ —هُنْ }	—هُمَا
	{ fem.	—هَا		

c. Before a connective Alif (§ 6 d) the suffixed pronoun of the 1. Pers. Sing. often receives its original *a* as auxiliary vowel, e. g. **أَعْطَانِي الْكِتَابَ** or **أَعْطَانِي الْكِتَابَ**. After *ā*, *ī* and *ai* the nominal suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. has the form **—ي** *ya*. Sometimes the suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. is denoted not by **—ي**, but simply by the vowel Kesr **—** e. g. **رَبِّ** my lord! thus after **ء** e. g. **أَحِبَّاءَ** with the suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. **أَحِبَّائِي** or **أَحِبَّائِي** 'ahibbā'ī (cf. § 4 b).

d. The suffixes هُنَّ, هُمَا, هُمْ after a preceding *i* sound take the vowel *i* instead of *u*, and thus become هِنَّ, هِمَا, هِم, e. g. مَالِئِ instead of مَالِئ. هِم before a connective Alif is generally pronounced هِم.—The suffixes كُمْ and هُمْ before a connective Alif take their original form كُمْ and هُمْ.

For further remarks on the connection of the nomina suffixa see § 68 and Table XXI.

e. The reflexive pronoun, when a certain amount of emphasis is required, is generally expressed by the word نَفْسٌ *nafsun* "soul", to which the corresponding suffixes are attached; in many cases the personal pronoun sufficiently expresses the reflexive.

§ 12. The *demonstrative pronouns* are the following (for the inflexion cf. § 53 a):

a. The simple pronoun, which seldom occurs:

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	ذَا	تَا; تِي; ذِي; ذِي
Dual	Nom. دَانِ	تَانِ
	Gen. Acc. دَيْنِ	تَيْنِ
Plur.	أُولَئِ (ūlā) or أُولَئِ (ūlā'i)	

This simple pronoun is compounded:

b. with the demonstrative particle هَا, which is generally written defectively ه (or less correctly هَ § 2b). Hence arises the usual demonstrative pronoun, referring to the nearer object = *this* (Germ. "dieser", Lat. "hic"):

	Masc.	Fem.	
Sing.	هَذَا	هَذِهِ (هَذِي)	
Dual	Nom. هَذَانِ	هَتَانِ	۸۸
	Gen. Acc. هَذَيْنِ	هَتَيْنِ	
Plur.	هَؤُلَاءِ ✓		8m1-

c. with a suffix of the 2. Pers., which in the older language, especially in that of the Koran, varies between the Sing. Dual and Plural according as one or more persons are referred to (e. g. ذَلِكُمْ, ذَلِكُمَا); otherwise however هُ is used without change. Between this هُ and the simple demonstrative pronoun the demonstrative particle هِ can be inserted. Thus two forms of the demonstrative pronoun arise, referring to the remoter object = *that* (Germ. "jener", Lat. "ille").

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	(ذَلِكَ, ذَالِكَ) ذَلِكْ, ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ, (تِيْكَ) تَاكَ
Dual	Nom. ذَاذِكَ, ذَانِكَ	تَاذِكَ, تَانِكَ
	Gen. Acc. ذَيْنِكَ, ذَيْنِكَ	تَيْنِكَ, تَيْنِكَ
Plur.	أُولَئِكَ, (أُولَآكَ), seldom أُولَئِكَ	

§ 13. The *relative pronouns* are the following:

- a. الَّذِي *who, which, that*, originally a demonstrative compounded with the article (hence the connective Alif); it is inflected in the following manner:

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	الَّذِي	الَّتِي
Dual	Nom. الَّذَانِ	الَّتَانِ
	Gen. Acc. الَّذَيْنِ	الَّتَيْنِ
Plur.	الَّذِينَ	الَّلَاتِي

- b. مَنْ (without inflexion): *the one who; one who* (also Plu.)

مَا (without inflection) = *the one which; something which*.

- c. أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّة (inflected in the Sing.) = *the one who* (mostly before the nominative); also compounded

with the preceding أَيُّمَنْ = *every one who; whoever*;
 أَيُّهَا = *whichever*.

§ 14. The *interrogative pronouns* are:

مَنْ *who?* (mas. and fem.)?

مَا *what*, frequently strengthened by the addition
 of the demonstrative مَا ذَا: ذَا *what then?*

أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّة *what sort of?*

REM. مَنْ is only inflected (like أَيُّ) when it stands
 absolutely: its inflection is as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing. Nom.	مَنْو	مَنْتْ
Gen.	مَنْي	مَنْة
Acc.	مَنَا	
Dual Nom.	مَنْان	مَنْتَيْنْ
Gen.	مَنَْيْنْ*	مَنْتَانْ
Acc.		
Plur. Nom.	مَنْونْ	مَنْاتْ
Gen.	مَنَْيْنْ	
Acc.		

After a preposition مَا in shortened to مَ, e. g. لِمَ
why? The interrogative word كَمْ *how many?* is con-
 nected with the interrogative pronoun مَا. ✓

Chapter II.

The Verb.

§ 15. The great majority of Arabic verbs has three
 radicals; a small minority has four radicals. The root

*) This and the following are pausal forms with rejected
 final vowel.

form, according to which the verbs are arranged in grammar and dictionary, is the 3. Pers. Sing. Perfect. The verbal, and especially the nominal forms are named throughout after the paradigm of the verb **فَعَلَ** (to do).

REM. All Arabic dictionaries arrange the nominal and verbal derivatives under this root form; one must therefore, in order to find these three radicals easily, pay strict attention to the consonants, which in nominal and verbal formations are added to the stem as prefixes, affixes or infixes.

§ 16. From the root form, or the so-called first stem, other stems are derived by regular changes: these stems are named either by the paradigm of **فَعَلَ** (e. g. the stem *ifta'ala*), or usually by numbers (e. g. the eighth stem, so also in the dictionary denoted simply by VIII). The following stems, the order of which is to be carefully noted, are the most usual:

I	فَعَلَ	IV	أَفْعَلَ	VII	اِنْفَعَلَ	X	اِسْتَفْعَلَ
II	فَعَّلَ	V	تَفَعَّلَ	VIII	اِفْتَعَلَ	XI	اِفْعَالَ
III	فَاعَلَ	VI	تَفَاعَلَ	IX	اِفْعَلَّ		

REM. No. IX and especially No. XI belong to the rarer forms; still more rare are XII **اِفْعَوَعَلَ**,

XIII *اِنْفَعَوْلَ*, XIV *اِفْعَنْلَلَ*, XV *اِفْعَنْلَى*. — The derived forms in use in each verb, and the change of meaning in these derived forms—are given in the dictionaries under each individual verb.

§ 17. In the majority of cases the root form I is pronounced *فَعَلَ*, e. g. *قَتَلَ* to kill, alongside of this, in most verbs of intransitive meaning, occurs the form *فَعِلَ* (cf. *قَبِلَ*), e. g. *مَرَضَ* to be ill; also the form *فَعَّلَ* (cf. *كَبَّلَ*), this latter form has always an intransitive meaning, e. g. *حَسُنَ* to be beautiful. Sometimes one of the forms *فَعَلَ* or *فَعَّلَ* occurs in the same verb alongside of *فَعِلَ*; sometimes both forms *فَعِلَ* and *فَعَّلَ* occur in the same verb.

REM. The arabic verb frequently expresses that a person wishes to perform an action, or allows it to be performed; thus, e. g. *قَتَلَهُ* he killed him can also mean "he wished to kill him", and *ضَرَبَ عُنُقَهُ* "he cut off his head" (prop. neck) may also mean "he caused his head to be cut off."

§ 18. The II. stem *فَعَّلَ* (corresponding to the Pi'el of Hebrew) denotes in general a greater intensity of the action expressed by the verb; this intensive

force can be referred to the subject, object, or accessory circumstances, e. g. *قَتَلَ* *to kill several, to massacre*, (with reference to the object). Most usually however this form is causative, e. g. *عَلَّمَ* *to know*, *عَلَّمَ* *to cause to know, to teach*; also declarative, e. g. *كَذَبَ* *to lie*, *كَذَّبَ* *to consider, to declare to be, a liar*; and denominative *جَيَّشَ* *to collect an army* (*جَيْشٌ*).

§ 19. The III. stem *فَاعَلَ* expresses the desire, or the attempt, to perform the action on a person, to influence a person or thing, e. g. *قَتَلَ* *to kill*, *قَاتَلَ* *to seek to kill, to fight*; *كَتَبَ* *to write*, *كَاتَبَ* *to correspond with one*; the latter is then transitive with accusative of the person.

§ 20. The IV. stem *أَفْعَلَ* (the Hif'il of the Hebrew) has a causative meaning, e. g. *صَلَحَ* *to be in good condition*, *أَصْلَحَ* *to bring into good condition*. Very often in this form there occur denominatives with a concealed transitive meaning, which from our point of view are apparently intransitive, and express the idea of action in a definite direction, e. g. *أَحْسَنَ* *to do good*; frequently moreover this form is used for verbs, which contain the idea of going to a place, of

entering or coming to a period of time or a condition, e. g. *أَغْرَبَ* to go to the West, *أَصْبَحَ* to enter into the time of morning, to do something in the morning, *أَشْرَفَ* to come to the top.

§ 21. The V. stem *تَفَعَّلَ* (the Hebrew Hithpa'el), a sort of middle, is derived from the second stem and has a reflexive (according to circumstances also a reciprocal) meaning, e. g. *تَكَبَّرَ* to make one'sself great, *تَعَلَّمَ* to allow oneself to be taught, to learn (Scotch "to learn one'sself"). Sometimes a verb in the V. form expresses the idea of, acting the part of, giving oneself out as, e. g. *تَنَبَّأَ* to give oneself out for a prophet, to act the part of a prophet.

§ 22. The VI. stem *تَفَاعَلَ*, derived from the III. stem, is the reflexive form of this III. stem, and has a reflexive or reciprocal meaning, e. g. *تَجَاسَرَ* to prove oneself clever, sharp, *تَقَاتَلَ* to fight one another.

§ 23. The VII. stem *إِنْفَعَلَ* (the Hebrew Niph'al, with connective Alif after § 6 a), mostly derived from the I. stem, is a middle or reflexive form of this I. stem, e. g. *كَسَرَ* to break, *إِنْكَسَرَ* to go to pieces, to break up.

§ 24. The VIII. stem *اِفْتَعَلَ* (with connective Alif § 6 a) is likewise a middle and reflexive form, for the most part of the I. stem, e. g. *اِعْتَرَضَ* to oppose one'sself; sometimes also with reciprocal meaning, e. g. *اِخْتَصَمَ* to quarrel with one another.

REM. In the case of roots beginning with *ص*, *ض*, *ط*, *ظ* the *ت* of the VIII. stem is changed to the emphatic *ط*, and in the case of dentals is even assimilated to the first radical, e. g. *اِصْطَبَعَ* instead of *اِظْطَبَعَ* of *صَبَعَ*; *اِظْلَمَ* or *اِطْلَمَ* instead of *اِظْطَلَمَ* from *ظْلَمَ*; likewise *ت* is sometimes assimilated to a preceding *ث*, e. g. *اِثْبَتَ* or *اِتْبَتَ* from *ثَبَتَ* prop. *اِثْبَتَ*; after *ذ*, *ن*, *د* the *ت* is changed to the soft *د*, e. g. *اِزْدَادَ* instead of *اِزْتَادَ* from *زَادَ*; *اِدْرَكَ* instead of *اِذْرَكَ*.

§ 25. The IX. stem *اِفْعَلَّ* (likewise the XI. *اِفْعَالَ*, both with connective Alif) are used of verbs which expressed the possession of inherent qualities, or bodily deformities, e. g. from the stem *صفر*: *اِصْفَرَّ* to be yellow; from the stem *عور*: *اِعْوَرَ* to be one eyed.

§ 26. The X. stem *اِسْتَفْعَلَ* (with connective Alif) is in the first instance a reflexive of the IV. stem *اَفْعَلَ*, e. g. from the stem *وحش* IV. *اَوْحَشَ* to *sadden*, X. *اِسْتَوْحَشَ* to *sadden one'sself*, to *make one'sself sad*. Very frequently the X. stem denotes also the wishing or begging something for one'sself, e. g. from *اغفر* to *pardon*, X. *اِسْتَغْفَرَ* to *beg for pardon*; or to consider a thing to be so and so, e. g. from *وجب* to *be necessary*, IV. *اَوْجَبَ* to *make necessary*, X. *اِسْتَوْجَبَ* to *consider something necessary*.

§ 27. The stems with four radicals are denoted in the nominal and verbal forms by the paradigm *فَعَّلَلَ* (i. e. with the help of a fourth radical added to *فَعَّلَ*), and have two chief forms, of which the first corresponds to the II. stem of the trilateral verb, the second *تَفَعَّلَلَ* corresponds to the V. stem of the trilateral verb, e. g. *كَبَكَبَ* to *throw down*, *تَكَبَّكَبَ* to *fall down*.

REM. The stems III. *اِفْعَنْلَلَ* and IV. *اِفْعَلَّلَ* (the latter corresponding to the IX. stem of the trilateral verb) are rare, e. g. *اِطْمَنَّ* to *be quiet*, from a stem. *طَمَنَّ*.

§ 28. A *Passive* stands alongside of the *Active*: it is formed in the Perfect in such a manner that the series *u-i-a* (*i* with the second, and *a* with the third radical) takes the place of the *a* vowels, e. g. Act. I.: فَعَلَ, Pass.: فُعِلَ; the additional syllables of the derived forms likewise receive the vowel *u*, e. g. Pass. V تَفُعِّلَ, VIII أَفْتُعِّلَ (with connective Alif).

§ 29. The Arabic verb has two principal tenses, a *Perfect*, which in general represents a finished action; and an *Imperfect*, which in general represents an unfinished action. The Imperfect is formed by the addition of the prefix يَ *ya* in the Act. of the I., V., VI., VII., VIII., IX. and X. forms; and of the prefix يُ *yu* in the Act. of the II., III., IV. and in the Pass. of all forms. The second radical receives in the I. stem the vowel *u*, *i* or *a*, which is specially mentioned in the dictionary in the case of each verb (e. g. Imp. *u*). Those Verbs, which in the Perf. have the form فَعَلَ (with *i* vowel), as well as all Passives, have *a* in the second radical of the Imperf., thus Imperf. Act. يَفْعَلُ; Pass. يُفْعَلُ. As regards the derived stems the second radical always receives *i* (with the exception of the V. and VI. stems, which have *a*), e. g. Imperf. II. يُفْعِلُ but V. يَتَفَعَّلُ.

§ 30. In the Imperfect different moods are distinguished, viz. *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Jussive*. They are distinguished as follows; in the Indicative the last radical, when it closes the word, is always pronounced with *u*, e. g. **يَفْعَلُ**, Imperf. III. **يُفَاعِلُ**; in the Subjunctive with *a*, e. g. **يَفْعَلْ**; and in the Jussive is left without a vowel, e. g. **يَفْعَلْ**. Besides these there is a double *modus energicus*, which is formed by affixing the syllables *anna* or *an* to the Imperfect, thus **يَفْعَلَنَّ** or **يَفْعَلْنَ**.

REM. As the *modus energicus* is of relatively rare occurrence, it is given in the Tables only in the paradigms of the usual strong verb. In the remaining verbs it can be easily formed after the analogy of these.

§ 31. The Imperative agrees in vocalisation and ending with the Jussive; except that there is no prefixed **يَ**. In the Imperative of the I. stem, when the first consonant has no vowel, an auxiliary vowel is in all cases prefixed (i. e. with a connective Alif); this vowel however vanishes in pronunciation when the word no longer stands alone, e. g. **اِفْعَلْ** but **قَالَ آخِرُجْ**, likewise in the VII.—X. stems. The Imperative has the same energetic by-forms as the Imperfect.

REM. In the Imperative of the I. stem *u* is used as the auxiliary vowel if the second radical has *u*, e. g. **أَقْتُلْ**; on the other hand *i* is used, if the second radical has *a* or *i*, e. g. **اِزْنِ**, **اِفْعَلْ**.

§ 32. In the Perfect, Imperfect and Imperative besides Singular and Plural there are also Dual forms of the second and third persons. The verbs are inflected by the addition of modified and shortened forms of the personal pronouns or nominal Dual and Plural endings (cf. on the endings *āni* and *ūna* of the the Imperf. Indic. § 53 a) to the stem forms **فَعِلْ** and **يَفْعَلْ**. These latter endings, like the ending *ina* of the II. Pers. Fem. Sing. Imperf., reject the syllable *na* in the Subjunctive, Jussive, and Imperative. The **اِ**, which is found after the final **وْ** in the Perf. and in these forms of the Imperfect and Imperative, has no effect on the pronunciation cf. § 2 e.—In the Imperfect in place of the prefix **يِ** of the 3. Masc., the prefix **يُ** is used for the forms of the 2. Pers., and those of the 3. Fem. (except the 3. Fem. Plu.); for the 1. Sing. **أِ**, is used, and **يُ** for the 1. Plu.

REM. In the Imperfect of the derived stems, which have the prefix **يُ** (V. and VI.), an Aphæresis

of the personal prefix تَ is sometimes found, e. g. تَتَفَعَّلُ instead of تَفَعَّلُ.

§ 33. The participles—the active is generally called *nomen agentis* the passive *nomen patientis*—are in all derived stems formed by the prefixing of the syllable مُ *mu*; in the Act. the second radical has *i*, in the Pass. *a*; e. g. II. Part. Act. مُفَعِّلٌ; Pass. مَفْعُولٌ. The Part. Act. and Pass. of the I. stem فَاعِلٌ and مَفْعُولٌ are to be specially noted.

REM. The Arabic participles as such express no idea of time; hence e. g. قَاتِلٌ can mean also, *one who has killed*; مَقْتُولٌ *one who will, or should be killed*

§ 34 a. The Infinitive (*nomen verbi*) of the I. stem has very various forms, and is therefore in the dictionaries given in the case of each separate verb. One of the most common forms is فَعَّلٌ, e. g. قَتَلَ to kill, killing; the Infinitives of the verbs فَعَلَ (§ 28) are as a rule فَعْلٌ, e. g. from غَضِبَ: غَضِبَ a being angry. The form فُعُولٌ is also frequent. Infinitives with prefixed مَ are likewise found, e. g. دَخُلٌ or مَدْخَلٌ (for several forms from the same verb often occur together, sometimes with modifications of meaning) from دَخَلَ to enter.

b. The Infinitive of the II. stem is تَفْعِيلٌ or تَفْعِيلَةٌ (the latter form always with verbs ult. ي); the Infinitive of the III. stem is فَعَالٌ or مُفَاعَلَةٌ (the latter form is like the Part. Pass. with the fem. ending). The Infinitives of the IV., VII., VIII., IX. and X. stems are formed by the insertion of an *ā* before the last radical: before this *ā* all other *ā*'s of the Perf. become *i*'s, IV. اِنْفَعَالٌ, VII. اِنْفَعَالٌ (with connective Alif), VIII. اِفْتَعَالٌ (id.), IX. اِفْعِلَالٌ (id.), X. اِسْتِفْعَالٌ (id.) The Infinitives of the V. and VI. stems take *u* after the second radical, V. تَفَعُّلٌ, VI. تَفَاعُلٌ.

REM. The Arabic Infinitives contain no temporal idea, and can stand equally well either in an active or in a passive sense, e. g. قَتَلَ *a killing*, or *a being killed*.

The conjugation of the quadriliteral verbs is shown in the table of paradigms No. III.

§ 35. The verba mediæ geminatae, i. e. those verbs, the second and third radicals of which are identical, e. g. فَرَر, (cf. the table of paradigms No. IV—VII) must also be reckoned among the common strong verbs.

a. A contraction of the last two radicals occurs in all those cases, in which the first, second, and third radical are pronounced with short vowels, e. g. فَرَّ from فَرَر (uncontracted verbs of the forms فَعَلَ and فَعَلْ sometimes occur); 3. S. Imperf. VII. يَنْفَر from يَنْفَرُ; likewise if after two short vowels the third radical has a long vowel, e. g. 3. Dual Masc. Perf. فَرَا from فَرَرَا, in most cases when the first radical has an *ā*, e. g. 3. Perf. III. فَار from فَارَر (in Pass. however فَوَرَر).

b. If the first radical is vowelless, and the second is furnished with a short vowel, contraction takes place, and the vowel of the second radical is thrown backward on to the first, e. g. 3. S. Imperf. Act. يَفَر instead of يَفَرُ; Pass. يُفَر for يُفَرُ; on the other hand contraction does not take place, when the vowel of the second radical is long, e. g. فَرَار.

c. If the third radical is vowelless, contraction does not take place, e. g. فَرَرَتْ.

REM. 1. In the Jussive (يَفَرُّ) and Imperative (افْرِ) contracted forms occur, notwithstanding the

The weak verbs.

§ 37. The weak verbal stems are those which have a , or a ي as first, second, or third radical.


REM. For the convenience of the learner, the old view is retained in the remarks following, viz, that these radicals , and ي had originally in all cases the value of consonants.

§ 38. The *verba primæ* , and ي (cf. Table of Paradigms No. VIII) differ from the strong verb in the following points:

a. In the Imperfect and Imperativ I those verbs primæ , which have *i* (cf. يَلِي) with the second radical, reject the first radical, e. g. وَلَدَ to bear, bring forth, Imperf. يَلِدُ, Imper. لِدْ.

Some verbs it is true, which have *a* in the Imperf. with the second radical, nevertheless reject the و, e. g. وَضَعَ to lay, Imperf. يَضَعُ; likewise وَقَعَ to fall, وَهَبَ to give, &c. (see the dictionary).

b. و in is changed to ي ī; uy to ū, e. g. Inf. IV from وَقَعَ (prop. اَوْقَعَ) = اِيْقَاعٌ; Imperf. IV from يَقِظُ to be watchful (prop. يُيَقِظُ) = يُوقِظُ.

c. In the VIII. stem the first radical is assimilated to the following ت, e. g. from وَعَدَ to promise, اِتَّعَدَ instead of اَوْتَعَدَ. 

REM. The same rules are in force for the formation of nouns, e. g. from وَعَدَ Imperf. I يَعِدُ the noun عِدَّة is formed; from وَدَعَ to leave, allow, Imperf. يَدَعُ, the noun دَعَا; from وَلَدَ the noun مِيلَاد (for مَوْلَاد) time of birth.

§ 39. The *Verba mediæ* و and ی vocalise their second radical in the I., IV., VII., VIII. and X. stems according to the following rules:

a. If the third radical has a vowel, there arises

ā from وَ	e. g.	قَالَ	from	قَوْلَ	(3. Perf. I)
” َيَ ”	”	سَارَ	”	سَيَّرَ	(3. Perf. I)
” وَ ”	”	يَخَافُ	”	يَخْوِفُ	(3. Imperf. I)
” َيَ ”	”	يُسَارُ	”	يُسَيِّرُ	(3. Imperf. Pass. I)
” وَ ”	”	يَنْقَالُ	”	يَنْقُولُ	(3. Imperf. VII)
” َيَ ”	”	يَسْتَارُ	”	يَسْتَوِرُ	(3. Imperf. VIII).

If however in these cases the third radical is vowelless, the ā is shortened to ă; only in the Perf. I. وَ and َيَ become ŭ and ĭ respectively (not a as in

قَالَ), e. g. 2. Perf. I قُلْتُ instead of قَوْلْتُ, سِرْتُ instead of سَيْرْتُ (so خَافَ from خَوْفٍ, 2. Perf. I however خِفْتُ instead of خَوِفْتُ); on the other hand according to the above rule, 2. Perf. IV أَقُلْتُ instead of أَقَوْلْتُ, 3. Jussive Pass. I يُسِّرْ from يُسَارُّ (يُسَيِّرُ), &c.

REM. The Jussive of the verb **كَانَ** *med.* **و** (*to exist, to be*) can reject the *n* in those forms in which no inflectional affixes are added, e. g. **يَكُنْ** alongside of **يَكُنْ**.

b. If the third radical has a vowel there arises

\bar{u} from و e. g. يَقُولُ from يَقُولُ (3. Imperf. I)

” وو ” مَقُول ” مَقُول (Part. Pass. I).

If the third radical is vowelless, \bar{u} is shortened to u , e. g. قُلْ 2. Imper. I.

c. If the third radical has a vowel, there arises

ī from يَ e. g. يَسِيرُ from يَسِيرُ (3. Imperf. I)

” يَقُولُ ” يَقِيدُ ” َوُ ” (3. Imperf. IV)

ن سِيرَ ن سِيرَ (3. Perf. Pass. I)

” قَوْلٌ ” قَيْدٌ ” ” (3. Perf. Pass. I)

” ^ويُؤْتِي ” ^ومَبِيع ” ^ومَبِيعُ (Part. Pass. I).

If the third radical is vowelless the *ī* is shortened to *ī̄*, e. g. *يَسِرُ* 3. Jussive I from *يَسِيرُ*; *قِلْتَ* 2. Perf. Pass. I from *قِيلْتُ*.

d. *اِوِ* and *اِيِ* become in the Partic. Act. I *اِاِ*, e. g. *قَائِلٌ* instead of *قَاوِلٌ* (on Medda cf. § 7).

e. The Infinitives of the IV. and X. forms receive the fem. ending to compensate for the shortening, e. g. *اِقَالَهٗ* instead of *اِقَالَ* from *اِقْوَالَ*.

REM. The above rules a—c are in full force also for the nominal derivatives from verbal stems mediæ و and ی, e. g. *مَقَالٌ* from *مَقُولٌ*, *دَارٌ* from *دَوْرٌ*, *بَاعَةٌ* from *بَيْعَةٌ*. Likewise according to c *مَسِيرٌ* arises from *مَسِيرٌ*; *مَيِّتَةٌ* from *مَيِّتَةٌ*; *ثِيَابٌ* from *ثِيَابٌ*.

§ 40. In those verbs, which have و or ی as *third radical*, these half-consonants are in many cases vocalised, or altogether rejected. Moreover the verbs ultimæ و pass over into verbs ultimæ ی in all derived stems (e. g. 3. Perf. II *غَرَى*), also in the Partic. Act. I, the Perf. and Imperf. Pass. I (*غُرِيَ*), likewise in those verbs which have the form *فَعِلَ* (e. g. (*رَضِيَ* for *رَضَوَ*)). The following rules are observed in the case of these stems:

a. *awa* and *aya* become *ā* (cf. § 39 a); in the case of verbs ult. , this *ā* is written with ا, e. g. *غَزَا* from *غَزَوَ*, in the case of verbs ult. ي this *ā*, when it is final, is written with ي (cf. § 2 d), e. g. *رَمَى* (with suffix however generally *رَمَاهُ*): 3. Imperf. Subj.: *يَرِضَى* instead of *يَرِضَيَ*. The 3. fem. Sing. Perf., which is shortened, forms an exception, e. g. *غَزَتْ* where *غَزَوَتْ* from *غَزَاتْ* would have been expected (similarly also the 3. fem. Dual *غَزَتَا*).

b. Apart from the verbs, which in the Perf. have *فَعِلَ*, and in the Imperf. *يَفْعَلُ* (cf. § 17), the verbs ultimæ , take the vowel *u* on the second radical of the Imperf. I, the verbs ultimæ ي take the vowel *i* in the Imperf. I. The language however does not tolerate *’nu* and *’yu* as final syllables after a preceding vowel, but changes

’nu into *ū* e. g. *يَغْزُوْ* for *يَغْزُوْ* from *غَزَا* .

’yu " *i* " *يَرِمْيُ* " *يَرِمْيُ* " *رَمَى*

’yu " *ā* " *يَرِضَى* " *يَرِضَى* " *رَضَى*

In the Jussive and Imperative these long final syllables are changed to short ones, e. g. Jussive يَغْزُ, اِرْضَ, يَرْمِ; Imper. اِغْزِ, اِرْمِ, اِرْضِ.

c. The endings \bar{u} (3. masc. Plu. Perf. cf. § 32), \bar{ina} (2. fem. Sing. Imperf.), and \bar{una} (3. and 2. masc. Plu. Imperf.), which begin with a vowel; as well as the endings \bar{i} and \bar{u} shortened from the two latter, which are used for the Subjunctive, Jussive and Imperative, are by rejection of the last radical added directly to the second, when this has another vowel than a ; if the second radical has a these suffixes combine with it to a diphthong, e. g. 3. Pl. Perf. غَزَوْا instead of غَزَوُوا, رَمَوْا instead of رَمَيُوا but رَضُوا instead of رَضِيُوا; 3. Pl. Imperf. يَغْزُونَ instead of يَغْزَوُونَ; يَرْمُونَ instead of يَرْمِيُونَ; يَرْضُونَ instead of يَرْضِيُونَ.

REM. The above rules hold good for the formation of the participles and the Infinitive, as also for the formation and the inflection of nouns—the following should be noted here:

a. After a vowelless consonant و^s , ز^s and ي^s remain unchanged, e. g. اَلْغَزْوُ *algazwu*, غَزْوُ *gazwun*, اَلرَّمْيُ *arramyu*, رَمْيُ *ramyun*.

b. After an *a* or *i* vowel ى (which is chiefly to be considered) coalesces into its corresponding long vowel, e. g. الرَامِى (ar-rāmī) from المُرَمِّى, الرَامِى (al-murammā) from المُرَمِّى (cf. above rule b); ىِ iyun becomes in, ىِ ayun becomes ān; in the case of the latter, notwithstanding the shortness of the vowel, ى is orthographically retained in writing, e. g. Part. Act. I رَامٍ rāmin from رَامِى muramman from مَرَمِّى; so also هُدًى hudan instead of هُدًى. — Likewise from عَصْرٌ is formed عَصًا 'aṣan; without the nunation أَلْعَصَا.

c. From ىِ arises ىِ and from this — according to the rule Rem. b, e. g. Inf. V after the form تَفْعَلُ تَرْمِي = تَرْمِي = تَرْمِي. — ىِ maintains its position, e. g. Part. Pass. I from غَزَا after the form مَفْعُولٌ مَغْرُوزٌ for which مَغْرُوزٌ is written. — ىِ on the other hand in the same form becomes ىِ written ىِ e. g. مَرْمُوى = مَرْمُوى.

d. The syllables ىِ and ىِ (similarly also ىِ and ىِ) pass over into ىِ, ىِ after a preceding ā, the half-vowel being changed to Hamza, e. g. Inf. IV اِرمَا instead of

اُرْمَائِ (on Medda cf. § 7 b); similarly without the Nunation اَلْاُرْمَاءِ; سَرَاو instead of سَرَاو.

e. The inflectional endings *ūna* and *īna* of nouns (cf. § 53 a) are added to nouns ending in *in* and *an* (Rem. b) in accordance with the rules given under c, e. g. رَام Plu. Nom. رَامُونَ, Gen. Acc. رَامِينَ; on the other hand مَرْمِي Nom. Pl. مَرْمُونَ, Gen. Acc. مَرْمِينَ cf. the Table of Paradigms No. XX.

§ 41. Of doubly weak verbs the following are to be chiefly considered:

a. Verba primæ و and ultimæ ي, e. g. وَقَى Imperf. according to § 38 a and 40 b يَقِي, Jussive يَقِ, Imper. properly قِ, instead of which قَه is written.

b. The verb رَاى to see, which in the Imperfect elides the Hamza and throws back its vowel *a* on to the first radical, thus يَرَى *yarā* instead of يَرَاى *yar'ā*, 3. Plu. يَرُونَ, Imperat. رَ or رَه, fem. رِي. Similarly the IV. form, meaning to show, runs اَرَى instead of اَرَاى, Imperf. اَرِي instead of اَرِي; Perf. Pass. اَرِي instead of اَرِي, &c.

c. The verb حَى to live, prop. حَيِ; Imperf. يَحْيَا (cf. Rem. to § 2 d) after the analogy of verbs ult. ي,

or *يَحْيَى* after the analogy of verbs *mediæ geminatae*: Perf. X *اِسْتَحْيَى* or *اِسْتَحْيَا* and alongside these forms also contracted *اِسْتَحَى* (*to be ashamed*).

§ 42. *لَيْسَ* *there is not* (compounded of the negative *لَا* and the unused noun *أَيْسَ* *يَيْسَ*) is inflected as follows:

	Sing.	Dual	Plural
3. masc.	لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا
3. fem.	لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَيْسْنَ
2. masc.	لَسْتَ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُمْ
2. fem.	لَسْتِ		لَسْتُنَّ
1.	لَسْتُ		لَسْنَا

§ 43. The verbs of praise and blame *نَعِمَ* *to be good*, *بُئِسَ* *to be bad*, which are seldom conjugated, are of irregular form.

§ 44. The so-called forms of admiration are treated by the Arabs as special forms; they are properly 3. Perfects, and 2. Imperatives of the IV. stem, which have received a peculiar meaning, e. g. *مَا أَفْضَلَ زَيْدًا* prop. *what has made Zaid excellent?* or *أَفْضِلْ زَيْدًا* prop. *make Zaid excellent!* which mean, *how excellent is Zaid!*—The verba *mediæ* , and *ي*

take the strong formation in these forms, e. g.
 هَذَا مَا أَهْوَنَ *how easy this is!*

§ 45. The addition of pronominal suffixes (§ 11 b) alters the form of the verbs only to a slight extent. An ا, standing after و *ū*, falls away, e. g. قَتَلُوهُ; the 2. fem. Sing. Perf. lengthens its final vowel e. g. ضَرَبْتِنِي. The ending تُمْ of the 2. Plu. Perf. becomes قَتَلْتُمُونِي compounded of قَتَلْتُمْ and the suffix of the 1. Sing.; the ending *ūna* of the Imperf. sometimes becomes *ū*, e. g. يَقْتُلُونَكِ or يَقْتُلُوكِ 3. Plu. Imperf. with the suffix of the 2. Sing. fem.

§ 46. a. When the object consisting of a personal pronoun is to be placed before the verb for the sake of emphasis, the nominal suffix added to the nominal sign of the accusative أَيًّا (أَيَّ, أَيَّ; أَيَّا with the suffix of the 1. Sing. is أَيَّائِي) is used instead of the verbal suffix immediately connected with the verb, e. g. أَيَّانَكَ نَعْبُدُ *to thee we pray.*

b. The Arabic verb can have two suffixes connected with it at the same time; in this case the pronoun of the first person precedes that of the second and third, the pronoun of the second person precedes that

of the third, e. g. *أَعْطَانِيهِ* *he gave it me*; frequently however instead of two suffixes the periphrasis with *إِيَّا* is used especially when both suffixes are of the third person, e. g. *زَوَّجَهُ إِيَّاهَا* *he let him marry her*.

Chapter III.

THE NOUN.

a. The formation of nouns.

§ 47. The Arabic nouns (substantive and adjective) are either primitive, e. g. *قَوْسٌ* *ox*, *رِجْلٌ* *foot*, or derivative, i. e. derived either 1) from verbal stems, or 2) from other nouns. To the former, the deverbalia, the participles and infinitives, mentioned already in §§ 33 and 34, belong. Besides the participles there are a number of verbal adjectives of which the following forms are to be particularly noted:

a. The form *فَعِيلٌ*, which occurs in a passive and in an active sense, e. g. *قَتِيلٌ* *killed*, *شَهِيدٌ* *a witness*, *خَصِيمٌ* *one, who strives with another*, (in the sense of *مُخَاصِمٌ* Part. Act. III).

REM. Nouns of the form فَعِيلٌ, derived from verbal stems med. و and ی, modify this form to فَعِيلٌ, e. g. سَيِّدٌ *lord* instead of سَرِيدٌ (from which in the first place سَيِّيدٌ would arise).

b. فَعُولٌ, e. g. كَذُوبٌ *lying* (frequently an intensive form).

c. أَفْعَلٌ, this form denotes colours and bodily defects, e. g. أَصْفَرٌ *yellow*; أَعْمَى for أَعْمَى (cf. § 40 Rem. b) *blind*.

As intensive forms the following may be noted:

d. فَعَالٌ intensive form to فَاعِلٌ and other verbal adjectives, e. g. كَذَّابٌ *lying*; this form serves at the same time to denote *nomina opificum*, e. g. نَجَّارٌ *joiner*.

e. Very frequently the form أَفْعَلٌ is derived from adjectives in the sense of an elative (generally so called because it includes both comparative and superlative), e. g. حَسَنٌ *beautiful*, elative أَحْسَنٌ *more beautiful, most beautiful*; صَغِيرٌ *small, young*, elative أَصْغَرٌ *smaller, younger, smallest, youngest*; عَلِيٌّ *high*, elative أَعْلَى *higher, highest*. The elatives, when they stand as predicates, do not change their form in

regard to gender and number (e. g. أَنْتِ أَحَقُّ بِهِ *thou [fem.] art more worthy of it*): in the sense of superlatives they are mostly determinate (§ 56 cf. the French "le plus"), in the sense of comparatives indeterminate, and are then construed with the preposition مِنْ (in the sense of our "than").

§ 48. Further to the nomina deverbalia the following especially belong:

a. The nouns of place and time formed with the prefix مَ *ma*, e. g. مَكْتَبٌ *the place for writing, the school*; مَقَامٌ (from مَقُومٌ after § 39 Rem.) *the spot where one stands, place*; مَرْعَى (from مَرَعَى after § 40 Rem. b) *the place for pasturage, the pasture*; also with the fem. ending, e. g. مَقْبَرَةٌ *place for burial*.

REM. Nomina loci et temporis of the derived stems have the form of the Participle Passive, e. g. مُتَوَضَّأٌ (from the V. stem) *the place, where the ritual washing is performed*; مُقَامٌ from اِقَامَ IV to place) *the spot where something is placed*.

b. The nomina instrumenti, formed with the prefix مِ, e. g. مِجْلَبٌ *milk-pail* from حَلَبَ to milk; مِفْتَاحٌ *key* from فَتَحَ to open.

c. The nomina speciei after the form *فَعْلَةٌ*, e. g. *كِتَابَةٌ* *the style and manner of writing, the writing* ("the hand.")

§ 49. To the denominatives the following classes of nouns specially belong:

a. Those nouns which are derived from others by means of the ending *ـِي* (corresponding to the hebr. *יִי*, fem. *יִיָּה* beside *יִיתָ*) and following the Arabic grammarians are called relative (adjectival) nouns, nouns of relation, e. g. *أَرْضِيّ* *belonging (related) to the earth* (*أَرْضٍ*), *earthy*; *شَامِيّ* *belonging to شَام Syria, a Syrian*. On the addition of this ending the feminine termination is rejected, e. g. *مَكِّيّ* (from *مَكَّة*) *an inhabitant of Mecca*; certain changes sometimes occur in the vowels of the words, e. g. *مَدَنِيّ* *an inhabitant of Medina* from *الْمَدِينَةُ Medina*. By the addition of the feminine ending (§ 51a) to these nomina relativa, feminines, e. g. *شَامِيَّةٌ* *a Syrian woman*, more frequently however abstract nouns are formed, e. g. *الْإِلَهِيَّةُ* *divinity* from *إِلَهِيّ* *divine* from *إِلَهِ God*; *جَاهِلِيَّةٌ* *heathenism* from *جَاهِلِيّ* *heathenish* from *جَاعِلٌ ignorant*.

REM. Formations of nomina relativa with the ending ـِ , are rare, e. g. from يَمَن^s *Yemen*, يَمَان^s (for يَمَانِي^s).

b. Nomina deminutiva after the form فُعَيْل^s are derived from trilateral nouns, e. g. عُبَيْد^s *a little slave* from عَبْد^s *a slave*. From quadrilateral nouns the form runs فُعَيْل^s , e. g. عُقَيْرِب^s *a small scorpion* from عَقْرَب^s ; صَوَّيْب^s deminutive from صَاحِب^s *companion*. Proper names also often have the deminutive form.

b) The Gender of Nouns.

§ 50. The Arabic has two genders, a masculine and a feminine. A number of words are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine (i. e. their gender is common). Words, which denote feminine beings, collectives, lands, towns, winds, members of the body occurring in pairs &c. are without a feminine ending essentially feminine: the gender is always marked in the dictionary.

§ 51. The following terminations are added as outward signs of the feminine:

a. most usually the ending $\text{ـَة}^{\text{س}}$ *atun* (or $\text{ـ}^{\text{س}}$ *atu*),
 e. g. $\text{قَاتِلَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *killing* fem. from $\text{قَاتَلَ}^{\text{س}}$; $\text{مَلِكَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *queen* from
 $\text{مَلَكَ}^{\text{س}}$; $\text{فَتَاةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *maiden* from $\text{فَتَى}^{\text{س}}$ (§ 40 Rem. b) *youth*.
 Many words are found only with the feminine ending,
 e. g. $\text{جَنَّةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *park, garden, orchard*.

REM. a. There are however a number of masculine nouns with this feminine ending, e. g. $\text{خَلِيفَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *Chalif*, $\text{طَلْحَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *Talḥa* (a masculine proper name). On the other hand there are feminine nouns, which, because they are essentially feminine, require no feminine termination, e. g. $\text{عَاقِرٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *barren* (of a woman).

REM. b. The feminine ending $\text{ـَة}^{\text{س}}$ is sometimes added to nouns of general meaning to denote a particular, single instance (*nomen unitatis*), e. g. $\text{ذَهَبَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *a piece of gold, a gold coin* from $\text{ذَهَبٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *gold*; $\text{حَبَامَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *a dove* from $\text{حَبَامٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *a flight of doves*. Abstract nouns of singular occurrence are likewise formed by the ending $\text{ـَة}^{\text{س}}$, e. g. $\text{قَعْدَةٌ}^{\text{س}}$ *a sitting down once* from $\text{قَعَدَ}^{\text{س}}$ *to seat one'sself, sit*.

b. The ending $\text{ـَى}^{\text{ا}}$ *ā*, e. g. $\text{كُبْرَى}^{\text{ا}}$ fem. of $\text{كَبِيرٌ}^{\text{ا}}$ *greater* (relative according to § 47 e); $\text{ذِكْرَى}^{\text{ا}}$ *remembrance*; $\text{دُنْيَا}^{\text{ا}}$ (§ 2 Rem.) *world*; $\text{أُولَى}^{\text{ا}}$ fem. of $\text{أَوَّلٌ}^{\text{ا}}$ *first*.

c. The ending $\text{ـَا} \dot{a}'u$, e. g. صَفْرَاء from أَصْفَر (adj. after § 47 c); صَحْرَاء desert.

c. *The Inflection of Nouns.*

§ 52. The Arabic has three numbers; Singular, Dual and Plural. There are two kinds of Plural, the usual Plural proper called also *Pluralis sanus* (whole or perfect plural) or outer plural; and the collective plural, called also inner, or broken plural (*Pluralis fractus*; cf. § 62 fol.). At present only the former comes under consideration.—Three cases are distinguished; Nominative, Genitive, Accusative.

§ 53. a. The following endings are used in the formation of the Dual and Plural:

Dual Nom.	ـَانِ (cf. § 32)
„ Gen. and Acc.	ـَيْنِ (cf. ١٢٠)
Plural mas. Nom.	ـُونَ (cf. § 32)
„ „ Gen. and Acc.	ـِينَ (cf. ١٢٠)
„ fem. Nom.	ـَاتِ (cf. ١٢١—)
„ „ Gen. and Acc.	ـَاتٍ

The inflectional endings of the Sing. are rejected before these endings; instead of the ة of the fem. ending ـَة is used before the Dual ending (also in the

Sing. before pronominal suffixes) e. g. جَارِيَّةٌ, Dual جَارِيَتَانِ.

b. Many adjectives, as well as a number of substantives, form their plural by affixing the terminations just mentioned. Instances are found of substantives with a fem. termination forming their Plural with a mas. ending (e. g. سَنَةٌ year, Plu. سِنُونَ), still more frequently however substantives without a fem. termination form their Plurals with a fem. ending, e. g. حَالٌ condition, Plu. حَالَاتٌ; سَمَاءٌ heaven, Plu. سَمَاوَاتٌ (with transition of Hamza into Wāw), also written سَمَوَاتٌ.

§ 54. In regard to the case inflection of the Singular, a distinction must be made between the so-called *Nomina triptota*, i. e. those declinable in full and the so-called *Nomina diptota*, i. e. those not declinable in full. The latter never receive the nunation; and distinguish outwardly, when they are not determined by the article or the addition of a genitive, only two cases.

a. The endings of the triptote noun are as follows:

in the Nom. Sing.	س un
in the Gen.	ن in
in the Acc.	ا an

Instead of اِـ only ـ is written with the fem. termination, e. g. رَجُلًا, but مَدِينَةً; also فَتًى and عَصًا (cf. § 3 b).

b. The endings of the diptote noun are:

in the Nom Sing. ـ u,

in the Gen. and Acc. Sing. ـ a.

In the dictionary the triptote are distinguished from the diptote nouns by the nunation being always written over the former, e. g. رَجُلٌ *a man*; while this is wanting with the diptota, e. g. أَسَدٌ.

§ 55. Whole classes of nouns are always diptote, e. g.

a. All proper names which are feminine or have the feminine ending, e. g. مِصْرُ, فَاطِمَةُ (*Egypt*), as fem. proper names; طَلْحَةُ, as the proper name of a man. Besides these the greater number of those proper names which are originally foreign to Arabic, e. g. إِبْرَاهِيمُ *Abraham*.

b. Many so-called broken plurals; cf. § 63, Nos. 20, 22, 25, 26, 29, 30.

c. Adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ (§ 47 c, e).

d. Adjectives of the form فَعْلَانُ, which in the fem. have the form فَعْلَى, e. g. غَضَبَانُ *angry*, fem.

e. Feminines formed with the endings ـِى or ـِآء (§ 51 b, c). Cf. also the inner plurals § 63, Nos. 21, 28.

§ 56. The fact of a noun's being determinate or indeterminate affects the inflection of the Sing. and of the fem. Plu. A noun is determinate:

a. Essentially, as a proper name, e. g. مُحَمَّدٌ *muḥammadun* Muhammed; أَحْمَدٌ *aḥmadu* Ahmed.

b. By means of the article, e. g. فَرَسٌ *a horse*, الْفَرَسُ *the horse*. (Certain proper names also always have the article, e. g. الْحَارِثُ *al-hāriṭu*.)

c. By the addition of a following genitive (noun or pronominal suffix), by which the nomen regens is placed in the status constructus, e. g. فَرَسُ الرَّجُلِ *the horse of the man*, فَرَسُهُ *his horse*.

The inflectional endings of a noun determined by the article (b) or by a following genitive (c), so far as they do not agree with those of an indeterminate noun, are as follows:

Sing. Nom.	ـُ
„ Gen.	ـِ
„ Acc.	ـَ
Plu. fem. Nom.	ـُ
„ „ Gen.	ـِ

i. e. the nunation is in all cases rejected. All triptote and diptote nouns receive these endings, when they are determined by the article or by annexation, e. g. Nom. ^{٤٥}أَسْوَدُ, Gen. Acc. ^{٤٥}أَسْوَدَ; but Nom. ^{٤٥}الْأَسْوَدُ, Gen. ^{٤٥}الْأَسْوَدِ, Acc. ^{٤٥}الْأَسْوَدَ.

§ 57. Before a following genitive (noun or pronominal suffix according to § 56 c) the endings نِ of the Dual and نَ of the Plural fall away, e. g.

Dual Nom. of عَبْدٌ = عَبْدَانِ, but عَبْدَا الْوَزِيرِ *the two slaves of the Vizier*.

Dual Gen. and Acc. عَبْدَيْنِ, but ضَرَبْتُ عَبْدَيَ عُمَرَ *I have beaten the two slaves of Omar* (before a connective Alif, e. g. عَبْدَيِ الْوَزِيرِ, cf. § 6 e).

Plu. Nom. of قَاصِبٌ *slaughterer, executioner* = قَاصِبُونَ, but قَاصِبُو الْمَلِكِ *the executioners of the king* (in such a case an Alif without effect on the pronunciation is sometimes inserted after the ū; قَاصِبُوا الْمَلِكِ, cf. § 2 e).

Plu. Gen. and Acc. قَاصِبِينَ, but رَأَيْتُ قَاصِبِي الْمَلِكِ *I have seen the executioners of the king*.

For the inflection of nouns in *in* and *an* cf. § 40

Rem. e.

§ 58. On the forms of the suffixed pronouns cf. § 11 b—d. Before the suffixed pronoun of the 1. Sing. the short inflectional endings of the stat. constr. of nouns fall off, e. g. قَصَائِي. The suffix of the 1. Sing. takes the form ي after final ā, ī or ai, e. g. to the Nom. Dual قَصَائِي; to فَتَي, فَتَي (§§ 2 d; 40 Rem. b); to the Gen. and Acc. Plu. قَصَائِي; to قَاضِي (§ 40 Rem. b), قَاضِي; to the Gen. and Acc. Dual قَصَائِي. The final ū of the stat. constr. Plu. mas. is changed to ī before the affixed ي, e. g. قَصَائُو becomes قَصَائِي, and this with the suffix of the 1. Sing. قَصَائِي (no longer to be distinguished from the form of the Gen. and Acc. Plu.). The same thing happens with the ending au of stems ult. ي (cf. Table XIX), e. g. مُصْطَفَو becomes مُصْطَفِي, and this with the suffix مُصْطَفِي (also no longer to be distinguished from the form of the Gen. and Acc.)

For the foregoing cf. the paradigms of nominal inflection in Tables XVIII fol.

§ 59. In the case of substantival outer plurals, which are formed from mas. or fem. nouns with one short vowel (i. e. فَعْلٌ, فِعْلٌ, فُعْلٌ und فَعْلَةٌ, فِعْلَةٌ, فُعْلَةٌ), the second radical frequently receives a vocalic

addition, which either is similar to the vowel of the first radical, or else is *ä*, e. g. ^فأَرْضَ *earth* Plu. ^فأَرْضُونَ, more seldom ^فأَرْضُونَ, and ^فأَرْضَاتُ more seldom ^فأَرْضَاتُ: ^فظُلُمَةً *darkness*, Plu. ^فظُلُمَاتُ alongside ^فظُلُمَاتُ and ^فظُلُمَاتُ. This is often the case with the Plu. to the form ^ففَعْلَةً, e. g. ^فطَعْنَةً (§ 51 Rem.) *a single blow, thrust*, Plu. ^فطَعْنَاتُ *some blows, thrusts*.

§ 60. Before the word ^فابْنُ *son* (which is then written without the *l*) a proper name loses the nunation in the case mentioned § 6 f 2, e. g. ^فمُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ *muslimu-bnu-lwalīdi* "Muslim the son of al-Walid". While ^فزَيْدُ ابْنِ بِشْرٍ *zaiduni-bnu bischrin* (§ 6 e) means "Zaid is the son of Bishr."

§ 61. After the vocative particle ^فيَا the noun follows in the Nom., but without the nunation, e. g. ^فمُحَمَّدُ *Muhammed*, ^فيَا مُحَمَّدُ *O Muhammed*. But if any complement whatever (e. g. an object or a genitive) is added to the noun standing in the vocative, the person addressed is put in the accusative, e. g. ^فيَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ: عَبْدُ اللَّهِ *O Abdallah! (O servant of God!)*; ^فيَا بَنِي كِنْدَةَ *O Banu Kinda!* i. e. members of the tribe Kinda (where ^فبَنِي, cf. § 57, is the form of the

stat. constr. from بَنِينَ).—After the vocative particle أَيُّهَا (before which يَا also can stand) a determinate Nom. always follows, e. g. يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ *O ye people*.

§ 62. The so-called broken plurals (*Plurales fracti*), called also inner plurals because they are formed, not by affixed terminations, but by internal change, are really only collective forms. Hence the language treats them as feminine Singulars and construes them accordingly, e. g. أَبْوَابٌ مُتَفَرِّقَةٌ *different gates*, where أَبْوَابٌ is the inner plural of بَابٌ (after the form أَفْعَالٌ), the Partic. V is put in the fem. Sing.—The inner plurals are inflected like the singulars, the inflection of which has been discussed in § 54 fol.

§ 63. As a rule the inner plurals are placed in the dictionary alongside the singular of the noun: where this is not the case it is to be assumed that the word has no plural, or only an outer one. Sometimes to one and the same word there are several plural forms, in certain cases each connected with one of its various meanings. Particular forms of the inner plural can as a rule be derived only from particular forms of the singular. Here follows a bare general view of these forms, commencing with the simplest.

1. ^{فَعْلًا} from ^{أَفْعَلُ} (§ 47 c) and its fem. ^{فَعْلَاءَ} (§ 51 c), e. g. ^{حُمْرُ} from ^{أَحْمَرُ} *red*; ^{سُودٌ} from ^{أَسْوَدُ} *black*; ^{بَيْضٌ} (for ^{بَيْضٌ}) from ^{أَبْيَضُ} *white*.

2. ^{فَعْلٌ} (rare) e. g. ^{حَلَقٌ} from ^{حَلَقَةٌ} *circle*.

3. ^{فِعْلٌ} from the Sing. ^{فِعْلَةٌ}, e. g. ^{قِطْعٌ} from ^{قِطْعَةٌ} *piece*.

4. ^{فُعْلٌ} mostly from the Sing. ^{فُعْلَةٌ}, e. g. ^{عُلبٌ} from ^{عُلْبَةٌ} *box*; ^{أُمَمٌ} from ^{أُمَّةٌ} *a people*; but also from ^{فُعْلَةٌ}, e. g. ^{قَرَى} (for ^{قَرَى} after § 40 Rem. b) from ^{قَرْيَةٌ} *village*.

5. ^{فُعْلٌ} from various forms of the Singular, e. g. ^{كُتُبٌ} from ^{كِتَابٌ} *a book*.

6. ^{فُعْلَةٌ}, e. g. ^{غُصْنَةٌ} from ^{غُصْنٌ} *a twig*; ^{إِخْوَةٌ} from ^{أَخٌ} *brother*.

7. ^{فَعْلَةٌ} especially from the Sing. ^{فَاعِلٌ}, e. g. ^{كَمَلَةٌ} from ^{كَامِلٌ} *perfect*; but also from ^{فَعِيْلٌ}, e. g. ^{سَادَةٌ} (for ^{سَيِّدَةٌ} after § 39 Rem.) from ^{سَيِّدٌ} *lord* (cf. § 47 a Rem.).

8. ^{فِعْلَةٌ} (rare), e. g. ^{قِرْدَةٌ} from ^{قِرْدٌ} *ape*.

9. ^{فُعَلَةٌ} from ^{فَاعِلٌ} ult. ^ي, e. g. ^{قُضَاةٌ} (for ^{قُضَيَّةٌ} after § 39 Rem.) from ^{قَاضٍ} *judge*.

10. ^{فِعَالٌ} a very frequent plural form from various Singulars, e. g. ^{قِدَاحٌ} from ^{قِدَحٌ} *arrow*.

11. ^{فَعِيْلٌ} (rare), e. g. ^{حَمِيْرٌ} from ^{حِمَارٌ} *ass*.

12. ^{فُعُولٌ} a very frequent plural form from various Singulars, e. g. ^{جُنُودٌ} from ^{جُنْدٌ} *a band of soldiers*; ^{بُكَيٌّ} and (with transition of *u* to *i*) ^{بِكَيٌّ} (for ^{بُكُوِيٌّ} after § 40 Rem. c) from ^{بَاكٌ} *weeping*.

13. ^{فِعَالَةٌ} (rare), e. g. ^{حِجَارَةٌ} from ^{حَجَرٌ} *a stone*.

14. ^{فُعُولَةٌ} (rare) e. g. ^{عُمُوْمَةٌ} from ^{عَمٌّ} *uncle*.

15. ^{فُعَلٌ} from ^{فَاعِلٌ}, e. g. ^{بُهْلٌ} from ^{بَاهِلٌ} *a female camel without a brand mark*.

16. ^{فُعَالٌ} from ^{فَاعِلٌ}, e. g. ^{كُتَّابٌ} from ^{كَاتِبٌ} *scribe*.

17. ^{أَفْعُلٌ} from various Singulars, e. g. ^{أَرْجُلٌ} from ^{رَجْلٌ} *foot*.

18. ^{أَفْعَلَةٌ} from various Singulars, e. g. ^{أَرْغَفَةٌ} from ^{رَغِيْفٌ} *cake of bread*; ^{أَحِبَّةٌ} from ^{حَبِيْبٌ} *friend, loved one*; ^{أَتَمَّةٌ} from ^{إِمَامٌ} *president*; ^{آلِهَةٌ} from ^{إِلَٰهٌ} *God*.

19. **أَفْعَالٌ** a very frequent Plural form from various Singulars, e. g. **أَمْطَارٌ** from **مَطَرٌ** *rain*; **أَشْيَاءٌ** (without nunation) from **شَيْءٌ** *thing, matter*.

20. **أَفْعِلَاءٌ** chiefly from **فَعِيلٌ**, e. g. **أَقْرَبَاءٌ** from **قَرِيبٌ** *relative*; **أَغْنِيَاءٌ** from **غَنِيٌّ** *rich*.

21. **فَعْلَى** (rare), e. g. **جَرَحَى** from **جَرِيحٌ** *wounded*.

22. **فُعَلَاءٌ**, e. g. **شُعَرَاءٌ** from **شَاعِرٌ** *poet*.

23. **فُعْلَانٌ**, e. g. **فَتَيَانٌ** from **فَتًى** *youth*; **جِيرَانٌ** (instead of **جُورَانٌ** § 39 Rem.) from **جَارٌ** *neighbour*.

24. **فُعْلَانٌ**, e. g. **بُلْدَانٌ** from **بَلَدٌ** *district*; **فُرْسَانٌ** from **فَارِسٌ** *rider*.

25. **فَوَاعِلٌ** chiefly from **فَاعِلَةٌ** and **فَاعِلٌ**, e. g. **صَوَاعِقُ** from **صَاعِقَةٌ** *thunder-bolt*; **فَوَارِسُ** from **فَارِسٌ** *rider*; **خَوَاصُّ** (instead of **خَوَاصِصُ** § 35 Rem. 2) from **خَاصٌّ** (or **خَاصَّةٌ**) *peculiar, noble, excellent*.

26. **فَعَائِلٌ** from Singulars with a long vowel after the second radical, e. g. **عَجَائِبُ** from **عَجِيبَةٌ** *miracle*; **عَرَائِصُ** from **عَرُوسٌ** *bride*.

27. **فَعَالٍ**, e. g. **فَتَاوٍ** from **فَتَوًى** *decision*.

28. **فَعَالَى**, e. g. **صَحَارَى** from **صَحْرَاءٌ** *desert*; **هَدَايَا** (instead of **هَدَايَى** § 2 d Rem.) from **هَدِيَّةٌ** *present, gift*.

29. فَعَالِلُ (according to the formation of the noun with prefixed ا, ت, or م respectively also أَفَاعِلُ, تَفَاعِلُ, مَفَاعِلُ from quadrilateral nouns, e. g. جَنَادِبُ from جُنْدَبُ grasshopper; أَأَمِلُ from أَئْمَلَةُ tip of the finger; تَجَارِبُ from تَجْرِبَةٌ experience; مَزَايِلُ from مَرْبَلَةٌ dung-heap; مَسَائِحُ from مَسَاحَةٌ interval.

30. فَعَالِيلُ (according to the formation of the noun also فَوَاعِيلُ, أَفَاعِيلُ, تَفَاعِيلُ, مَفَاعِيلُ respectively,) from quadrilateral nouns, which have a long vowel before the last radical, e. g. سَرَاحِينُ from سِرْحَانُ wolf; جَوَاسِيسُ from جَاسُوسٌ spy; أَكَالِيلُ from أَكْلِيلُ crown; تَصَارِيفُ from تَصْرِيفُ turning, declension; مَقَادِيرُ from مَقْدُورٌ lot, fate.

31. فَعَالِلَةٌ (according to the formation of the noun also أَفَاعِلَةٌ, تَفَاعِلَةٌ, مَفَاعِلَةٌ respectively) from quadrilateral nouns, e. g. جَبَّارٌ from جَبَّارَةٌ mighty man, giant; أَسَافِقَةٌ from أُسْقَفُ bishop; تَلَامِيذٌ from تَلَامِيذٌ scholar; بَغَادِدِيُّ from بَغْدَادِيٌّ an inhabitant of Bagdad.

§ 64 a. The Plural forms Nos. 25—31 (only No. 28 differs slightly) fall under the class of collectives

formed from nouns of more than three radicals; all these take an *ā* with the first, an *ā* with the second, an *i* with the third radical, and are (with the exception of No. 31) diptota. Plurals of these forms, derived from nouns ult. *ى*, form an exception; in that they receive the nunation in the Nom. and Gen. though not in the Acc., e. g. Nom. and Gen. جَوَارٍ (after the form فَوَاعِلُ No. 25) from جَارِيَّةٌ *female slave*; Acc. however جَوَارِي; likewise the forms under Nos. 27 and 29, e. g. مَعَانٍ (after the form مَفَاعِلُ No. 29 from مَعْنَى *meaning*).

b. The forms 6 and 17—19 are as a rule used only for objects less than 10 in number.

§ 65. The following nouns (arranged here alphabetically) are irregular in their mode of inflection:

a. أَبٌ *father*, أَخٌ *brother*, حَمٌ *father in law*; in the stat. constr. (as also before a suffix beginning with a consonant) take the forms:

Nom.	أَبُو,	أَخُو,	حَمُو
Gen.	أَبِي,	أَخِي,	حَمِي
Acc.	أَبَا,	أَخَا,	حَمَا

The Dual of أَبٌ has the form أَبَوَانِ (i. e. *both parents*), the Plural has the form آبَاءٌ (§ 63 No. 19). The Voc.

Sing. with suffix of the 1. Pers. Sing. **يَا أَبَتِ**, **يَا أَبَتِي**,
يَا أَبَتَ.

b. **بَنُون** son; outer Plu. Nom. (stat. constr. **بَنُونِ**), Gen.-Acc. **بَنِين** (stat. constr. **بَنِينِ**); inner Plu. **أَبْنَاءَ** after § 63 No. 19.

c. **أَخ** brother, see under a; inner Plu. after § 63 No. 6 **إِخْوَة** or No. 23 **إِخْوَان**.

d. **أَخْت** sister, Plu. **أَخَوَات**.

e. **إِمْرَء** or **إِمْرُؤ** (alongside of **مَرء**) man; Gen. **إِمْرِي**; Acc. **إِمْرًا**.

f. **إِمْرَأَة** woman; Plu. from another stem **نِسَاء** (§ 63 No. 10), **نِسَوَة** (§ 63 No. 6), or **نِسْوَان** (§ 63 No. 23).

g. **أُم** mother, Plu. **أُمَّهَات** or **أُمَات**.

h. **إِنْسَان** man, human being, Plu. **أَنَاس**, generally **نَاس**.

i. **بِنْت** daughter, frequently also **إِبْنَة** (with connective Alif), Plu. **بَنَات**.

k. **دِينَار** dinar, gold-piece; inner Plu. after § 63 No. 30 **دَنَانِير**.

l. ذُو (only in the stat. constr.) *possessor of* . . . ;
Gen. ذِي; Acc. ذَا; Dual Nom. ذَوَا; Plu. Nom. ذَوُو,
for which أُولُو is generally used.

m. سَنَةٌ *year*, Plu. Nom. سِنُونَ (or سُنُونَ);
Gen.-Acc. سِنِينَ.

n. عَمْرُو *'amrun*, 'Amr, mas. proper name. In
writing a و is added to this word in the Nom. and
Gen. (عَمْرُو), to distinguish it from عَمْر *'amaru* (dipt-
oton) 'Omar. Acc. عَمْرًا 'Amr, Gen.-Acc. عَمَرَ 'Omar.

o. فَم or فَوْه *mouth*, in the stat. constr. generally
Nom. فَم, Gen. فِي, Acc. فَا; inner Plu. (after § 63
No. 19) أَفْوَاهٌ.

p. لَيْلٌ *night*, inner Plu. (from a stem لَيْلِي, after
§ 63 No. 27) لَيْالٍ.

q. مَاءٌ *water*, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 10) مِيَاهٌ
or (No. 19) أَمْوَاهٌ.

r. يَدٌ *hand*, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 17) أَيِّدٌ
from أَيْدَى (cf. § 40 Rem. c).

s. يَوْمٌ *day*, inner Plu. (after § 63 No. 19) أَيَّامٌ
from أَيَّوَامٌ.

*Chapter IV.***The Numerals.**

§ 66. The cardinal numbers have the following forms:

	Mas.	Fem.	
1	وَاحِدٌ	وَاحِدَةٌ	inflected
	أَحَدٌ	أَحَدَى	
2	إِثْنَانِ	إِثْنَتَانِ	(inflected as a Dual)
3	ثَلَاثٌ	ثَلَاثَةٌ	inflected
4	أَرْبَعٌ	أَرْبَعَةٌ	"
5	خَمْسٌ	خَمْسَةٌ	"
6	سِتٌّ	سِتَّةٌ	"
7	سَبْعٌ	سَبْعَةٌ	"
8	ثَمَانٍ (Tab.XX)	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	"
9	تِسْعٌ	تِسْعَةٌ	"
10	عَشْرٌ	عَشْرَةٌ	"
11	أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ	أَحَدَى عَشْرَةَ	without inflection

Mas.

Fem.

12 اثْنَا عَشَرَ اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ Gen. Acc. "اِثْنَى عَ،
"اِثْنَتَى عَ"

13 ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ without inflection

14. أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ " "

15 خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ " "

16 سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ " "

17 سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ " "

18 ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ " "

19 تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ " "

20 عِشْرُونَ like all tens inflected as an outer
Plu. mas.

21 إِحْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ

30 سِتُّونَ 40 أَرْبَعُونَ 50 خَمْسُونَ 60 سِتُّونَ

70 تِسْعُونَ 80 ثَمَانُونَ 90 تِسْعُونَ

100 مِائَةٌ (also written مِئَةٌ, and always to be pronounced so *mi'atun*, because the Alif does not affect the pronunciation).

200 مِائَتَانِ, 300 مِائَةٌ*, 400 أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ, 500
 ثَمَانِي 800, سَبْعُ مِائَةٍ 700, سِتُّ مِائَةٍ 600, خَمْسُ مِائَةٍ
 تِسْعُ مِائَةٍ 900, مِائَةٌ.

1000 أَلْفٌ, 2000 أَلْفَانِ, 3000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ (where
 آلَافٍ is an inner Plural after the form أفعال § 63,
 No. 19) &c. 11000 أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا, 100000 مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ,
 1000000 أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ.

§ 67. The cardinal numbers are connected with
 the words, which denote the objects numbered, in the
 following manner:

a. The numbers 3—10 (except when they are
 placed after the noun in apposition, which is also
 possible) take the word, which denotes the object
 numbered, after them in the Gen. Plu.; the Fem. form
 of these numeral substantives is used with nouns of
 the Mas. gender, and the Mas. form with nouns of
 the Fem. gender, e. g. ثَلَاثَةُ بَنِينَ *three sons*
 أَرْبَعُ بَنَاتٍ *four daughters*.

b. The numbers from 11—99 take the word, which
 denotes the object numbered, after them in the Acc.

* Often written ثَلَاثِيَّةٌ &c. also.

Sing., e. g. ثَلَاثُونَ رَجُلًا 30 *men* (in Germ. 30 Mann, cf. in Eng. 30 horse for 30 horsemen).

c. The numbers from 100 upwards take the word, which denotes the object numbered, after them in the Gen. Sing., e. g. أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ رَجُلٍ 400 *men*.

d. In compound numbers the mode of construction depends on the last numeral. For the combination of numerals the particle وَ is used; the units and tens are placed either before the hundreds, or after the thousands and hundreds, e. g. 1885 *years* is either أَلْفٌ وَثَمَانِيٌّ or خَمْسٌ وَثَمَانُونَ وَثَمَانِيٌّ مِائَةٌ وَأَلْفٌ سَنَةٌ مِائَةٌ وَخَمْسٌ وَثَمَانُونَ سَنَةٌ.

§ 68 a. The ordinal numbers have for the most part the form of the Part. Act. I, and are of the following forms:

	Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.
1.	أَوَّلٌ, first	أُولَى	6.	سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ
2.	ثَانٍ	ثَانِيَةٌ	7.	سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ
3.	ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ	8.	ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ
4.	رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ	9.	تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ
5.	خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ	10.	عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ

Mas. Fem.

11. حَادِيَّةَ عَشْرَةَ حَادِي عَشَرَ without inflection
 12. ثَانِيَّةَ عَشْرَةَ ثَانِي عَشَرَ " "
 13. ثَالِثَةَ عَشْرَةَ ثَالِثَ عَشَرَ &c.

The cardinal numbers are used to express the ordinals of the tens, &c.

b. Fractional numbers are generally expressed by the form فُعِلْتُ, e. g. ثُلُثٌ *a third*.

Chapter V.

The Particles.

§ 69. The adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions cannot all be enumerated here; reference must be made to the dictionary. The adverbial case in Arabic is the Acc., e. g. طَوِيلًا *for long*. The prepositions also are for the most part accusatives in the stat. constr., e. g. فَوْقَ *above*.

§ 70. The following particles (alphabetically arranged) are connected inseparably with words:

a. اَ (هَ) interrogative particle, e. g. أَقْتَلَ *has he killed?*

b. **ب** (ب) prep. = *in*, e. g. with pronominal suffixes,

1. **بِي** *in me*, 2. mas. **بِكَ**, 3. mas. **بِهِ** &c.

c. **تَ** particle of asseveration, e. g. **تَاللَّهِ** *by God*,
by Jove.

d. **سَ** shortened from **سَوْفَ** particle, which gives the Imperf. the meaning of a future, e. g. **سَيَقْتُلُ** *he will kill*.

e. **فَ** *then, for, so, thus*, a particle denoting a less immediate (close) connection than **وَ**,—used especially before a verbal sentence, the subject of which is not identical with that of the preceding sentence.

f. **كَ** (ك) *instar, like, as*.

g. **لَ** a corroborative particle before verbs, esp. in oaths, e. g. **لَيَقْتُلَنَّ** *he will certainly kill*; it is used also before nouns.

h. **لِ** (ل) prep. and conj., before suffixes (except with the 1. Pers. Sing. which is **لِي**), e. g. **لَكَ**.

i. **وَ** (و, و) connective particle *and*; as an asseverative particle with the Gen., e. g. **وَاللَّهِ** *by God*,
by Jove.

§ 71. In regard to the combination of the prepositions and conjunctions with suffixes, besides what

was mentioned in § 58, the following may also be noted:

a. As in the case of nouns the final vowels are rejected before the suffix of the 1. Sing., e. g. **بَعْدَ** *after*, with the suffix of the 1. Sing. **بَعْدِي**, but **بَعْدَكَ**, &c.

b. The prepositions **عَلَى** *over* and **إِلَى** *against* vocalise the final **ي** before suffixes (against § 2 d), e. g.

with suffix of the 2. mas. **إِلَيْكَ**, **عَلَيْكَ**

" " " " 3. " **إِلَيْهِ**, **عَلَيْهِ**

" " " " 1. " **إِلَيَّ**, **عَلَيَّ** (after § 58)

c. **إِنَّ** *look, behold, really, truly*, and **أَنَّ** *that*, have the forms:

with the suffix of the 2. Sing. mas. **إِنَّكَ** and **أَنَّكَ**,

" " " " " 1. " **إِنِّي** or **أِنِّي**,

" " " " " **أَنْتِي** or **أَنْتِي**,

" " " " " 1. Plu. **إِنَّا** or **أِنَّا**,

" " " " " **أَنْتُمْ** or **أَنْتُمْ**.

PART III.

REMARKS ON SYNTAX.

Chapter I.

The Tenses.

§ 72. The *Perfect* (cf. § 29) expresses a completed action, the completion of which falls either in the past, the present, or the future; or is thought of as falling in one of these periods. The *Imperfect* expresses an incompleted action, which can likewise fall in either of these three periods of time.

§ 73 a. The *Perfect* is in the first place the narrative tense, when an action completed in the past is the subject of discussion; as a rule it is to be rendered by our *Preterite*, e. g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ *there came Zaid*.

b. The *Perfect* expresses that an action or a state has continued from the beginning, and hence continues still, e. g. اِخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ *learned men (always) disagree*; اَللّٰهُ تَعَالٰى *God, he is (from eternity) exalted*.

c. When the Perfect expresses an action completed in the present, it is to be rendered by our Present tense, e. g. *أَعْطَيْتُكَ هَذَا* *I present you with this* (at this moment the action is completed).

d. The Perfect in oaths and wishes expresses, in the meaning of the speaker, an action completed in the future, e. g. *لَعَنَهُ اللَّهُ* *God curse him*; also with *لَا* = *not*, e. g. *لَا رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ* *may God not have mercy upon him*.

e. When the particle *قَدْ* occurs before the Perfect, it is to be rendered in the majority of instances by our Perfect, e. g. *قَدْ ذَكَرْنَا* *we have mentioned* (often with the meaning "just now"), or *we had mentioned*. Though the perfect with *قَدْ* can be used in the sense mentioned under c.

f. When the verb *كَانَ* (*to be*) occurs before the Perfect (with or without *قَدْ*), it expresses for the most part our Pluperfect, e. g. *لَمَّا وُلِدَ مُوسَى كَانَ قَدْ أَمَرَ فِرْعَوْنُ بِقَتْلِ الْأَطْفَالِ* *as Moses was born, Pharaoh had (just) commanded to kill the young children*.

REM. After *كَانَ*, instead of the above verbal sentence (§ 91), a compound nominal sentence (§ 92) can follow, e. g. *كَانَ فِرْعَوْنُ قَدْ أَمَرَ ...*

g. On the Perfect after إِذَا, and in conditional sentences cf. §§ 101, 102.

§ 74. The *Imperfect* (Indicative) is to be rendered according to circumstances by our Present or our Future, sometimes also by our Imperfect.

a. When the Future is to be particularly expressed by the Arabic Imperfect, the adverb سَوْفَ (*end*), also shortened to سَ and then inseparable (cf. § 70 d) is prefixed, e. g. سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ *ye shall recognise (it)*; سَنُرِيهِمْ (§ 41 b) *we shall show them*.

b. The Imperfect expresses an action, which accompanies another and that a past action, or which is future in regard to this other action, e. g. جَاءُوا أَبَاهُمْ يَبْكُونَ *they came to their father, weeping* (i. e. while they were weeping, cf. § 100 b); أَتَى الْعَيْنَ يَشْرَبُ *he came to the spring, to drink*.

c. The Latin Imperfect is expressed by the combination of كَانَ with the Imperfect (cf. § 73 f, and Rem.); we can sometimes render such a combination by our "used" "was (were) wont", e. g. كَانَ يَأْخُذُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ ثَلَاثَةَ دَرَاهِمَ *he used to take each day three drachmæ*.

REM. The Imperfect is in this manner placed in direct dependence on another verb, e. g. مَا زِلْتُ أَشْرَبُ *I did not cease drinking*; جَعَلَ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ *he began to speak with the people*.

§ 75. The *Subjunctive* is used in dependent sentences, in which the action is to be represented as one expected, and dependent on the principal clause, hence for the most part as one which will possibly occur only in the future. Hence this mood stands frequently (though not always) after the conjunctions أَنْ *that*, أَلَّا (from لَا أَنْ) *that not*, حَتَّى *until that*, فَ *so that*; and always after لِئَلَّا *in order that*, لِكَيْ (from لَا لِكَيْ) *in order that not*, e. g. جَاءَ لِيُزَوِّدَنِي *he came in order to visit me*; أَمَرَ أَنْ يَكْتُبَ *he commanded him, that he should write*.—In like manner the *Subjunctive* stands after لَنْ (لَا أَنْ) *it will not be, that*, e. g. لَنْ أَرْسِلَهُ *I shall not send him*.

§ 76. The *Jussive* expresses a command, and is used:

a. in positive commands, mostly connected with the particle لِ, e. g. لِيَكْتُبَ *he shall write*.

REM. If فَ occurs before such a form, لِ loses its vowel, e. g. فَلْيَتَوَكَّلْ . . . (then) *he shall trust*.

b. In all negative commands, or prohibitions, with the negative particle لَا, e. g. لَا تَقُلْ *say not, thou shalt not say.*

c. Always after the negative particle لَمْ, as the negation of a completed action, e. g. لَمْ يَضْرِبْ *he has not struck* (as the negation of ضَرَبَ).

d. In the protasis and apodosis of conditional sentences, cf. § 103.

§ 77. As regards the use of the *Participles* the following may be noted:

a. The Active Participle frequently expresses (especially as the predicate of a nominal sentence, § 92 a) our "on the point of", e. g. أَنَا قَادِمٌ إِلَيْكَ *I am (on the point of) coming to thee.*

b. The Passive Participle frequently has the meaning of a gerundive, e. g. مَرْجُوٌّ *hoped for, or to be hoped for.*

c. The Passive Participle in Arabic can also be used impersonally, e. g. كُتِبَ عَلَى الْحَجَرِ *it is written upon the stone*, حَجَرٌ مَكْتُوبٌ عَلَيْهِ *a stone upon which (it) is written*; also determined الْحَجَرُ الْمَكْتُوبُ عَلَيْهِ *the stone upon which (it) is written.*

Chapter II.

The government of the Verb.

§ 78. The accusative is in general the case dependent on the verbal idea. We distinguish here the cases in which the accusative stands α as object, β as predicate, γ as nearer definition.

α § 79. It is the province of the dictionary to point out, which verbs in Arabic have their object, or objects connected directly, or by means of a preposition. Certain classes of verbs in Arabic, as e. g. the verbs of “coming”, take the goal, to which the action is directed, as a direct object, e. g. جَاءَ الْبَيْتَ *he came home*. The following take two accusatives: 1) Causative forms of verbs, which in the I. stem, are simply transitive, e. g. عَلَّمَ *to know*; causat. عَلَّمَهُ الْقُرْآنَ *he taught him reading*; 2) Verbs which express a “filling” or “giving”, those likewise, which express a “making for something”, a “considering to be something” and a “naming”, as also many others, e. g. جَعَلَ اللَّهُ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا *God made the earth for a carpet*; سَمَّى ابْنَهُ مُحَمَّدًا *he called his son Muhammed*.

REM. a. As in the latter cases the two objects really stand in the relation of subject and predicate

to one another (cf. § 92), a verb can stand instead of a noun as the second (remoter) object, e. g. وَجَدُوا بِضَاعَتَهُمْ رَدَّتْ إِلَيْهِمْ *they found their money (such as was) given back to them.*

REM. b. When a verb, which governs two accusatives, is put in the passive, the second accusative remains as it was, e. g. سُمِّيَ ابْنُهُ مُحَمَّدًا *his son was called Muhammed.*

§ 80. A so-called "absolute object" can be added to every verb to strengthen or more nearly define the verbal idea. This absolute or inner object (cognate accusative) may be an infinitive, a nomen speciei (§ 48 c), or any other noun; e. g. ضَرَبَ ضَرْبًا *he struck a stroke* (supply "and what a stroke!"); أَدَّبَهُ تَأْدِيبًا *he trained him with a good training* = well (in Arabic also with omission of the Infinitive); ضَرَبَنِي *he struck me a stroke which hurt me*; أَوْجَعَنِي ضَرْبًا *he struck me a stroke which hurt me*; سَلَكَ سِيرَةَ جَدِّهِ *he walked the walk of his grandfather*, i. e. behaved like his grandfather.

β § 81. The accusative stands as predicate:

a. with verbs, which express a "being something" or a "becoming something"; of quite especial frequency with the verb كَانَ (med. وَ). This verb means either

1) *to be*, in the sense of *to exist*, e. g. *كَانَ وَزِيرٌ* *there was (lived) a vizier*, or 2) *to be something*; in the latter case it takes its predicate in the accusative, as do all verbs of similar meaning (e. g. *أَمْسَى* *to be something late*; *أَصْبَحَ* *to be something early*; *عَادَ* *to be or become something again*; *دَامَ* *to remain, to last*; *زَالَ* (especially with a negative) *to cease to be*; *صَارَ* *to become something*; *كَانَتْ أَمْرًا لَيْسَ* *not to be something*), e. g. *كَانَتْ أَمْرًا حَامِلًا* *his wife was with child*.

b. With the negative *لَا*, when this expresses a general negation as the Arabs say. The accusative, which is always undetermined after *لَا*, then loses the nunation, e. g. *لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ* *there is (absolutely) no God except Allah*.

γ § 82. The accusative stands as nearer definition in the following cases:

a. The Accusative is used in expressions of place and time, e. g. *نَظَرَ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا* *he looked right and left*; *سَارَ فَرَسًا* *he journeyed a parasang*; *جَاؤا عِشَاءً* *they came late in the evening*; *اسْتَمَرَّ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُدَّةً* *he remained firm on this (matter) during the continuance of his life*.

b. The accusative (as a rule undetermined) is very frequently used in verbal sentences (rarely in

nominal sentences, § 90) to express a state or condition, e. g. سَارَ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ *he journeyed, travelling in the direction of Medina*; لَقِيتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا *I have met 'Amr, weeping (i. e. while he wept)*.

REM. In regard to the case denoting the state or condition, it must always be carefully noted to which of the preceding nouns it refers; thus in the latter instance it might refer to the pronominal subject contained in لَقِيتُ.

c. The accusative of specification, also undetermined for the most part, expresses a nearer definition, e. g. تَصَبَّبَ عَرَقًا *he streamed with (in regard to) perspiration*; this accusative is frequently joined to elatives (§ 47e) of a somewhat general meaning, e. g. أَشَدُّ قَسَاوَةً *stronger as regards hardness = harder*.

d. The accusative is used to express the cause or the purpose of an action; in this case also it is for the most part undetermined, e. g. هَرَبُوا جُبْنًا *they fled for cowardice*.

Chapter III.

The government of the noun.

§ 83. There can be added to a noun, α the article, β a permutative (apposition), γ a qualification, δ a genitive.

α § 84. A noun, when it is preceded by the article, is determined (§ 56 b). This determination can however be stronger or weaker:

a. Certain words, which contain a temporal idea, are very strongly determined, e. g. *السَّاعَةُ* *this hour* = *now*, *الْيَوْمَ* *this day* = *today*, (הַיּוֹם) cf. the colloquial "the day"). In this case the article has the meaning of a demonstrative (cf. this use of the article in Greek).

REM. Like the article the demonstrative pronouns also are placed before, more seldom after, the determinate substantive, e. g. *هَذَا الرَّجُلُ* *this man*.

b. The determination by the article often serves merely to denote the genus (the generic use of the article), e. g. *هُوَ مِثْلُ الْحِمَارِ* *he is like an ass*.

β § 85. Under apposition (i. e. when a permutative is added to a noun) the following cases have especially to be mentioned:

a. A word denoting the material (cf. § 94 d) can be added in apposition to a substantive, e. g. *الصَّنَمُ الذَّهَبُ* *the golden idol*, prop. *the idol, the gold*.

b. The word *كُلُّ* *totality* either governs the noun, or with a suffix referring to the noun stands in

apposition to the noun, e. g. *كُلُّ النَّاسِ* or *النَّاسُ كُلُّهُمْ* *all men* (where *كُلُّ* naturally remains unchanged in gender and number).

γ § 86. A qualification can be:

a. An adjective, e. g. *رَجُلٌ حَسَنٌ* *a handsome man*; with the article *الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ*.

b. A preposition with its case, e. g. *رَجُلٌ مِّنَ الْأَنْصَارِ* *a man(of) belonging to the helpers(of) Muhammed*.

c. A relative sentence, see § 99 b.

REM. When more than one qualification stands with a noun they are as a rule asyndetically connected (cf. § 97), e. g. *هُوَ فِطْنٌ بَلِيعٌ* *he is intelligent and eloquent*.

δ § 87. By the connection with a following genitive the governing noun, which is put in the so-called status constructus without the article, is determined; e. g. *رُمْحُ الْفَارِسِ* *the lance of the horseman*; the suffixes also are determinate genitives, e. g. *رُمْحُهُ* *his lance*. When the dependent noun is indeterminate, the governing noun generally remains indeterminate also, e. g. *بِنْتُ مَلِكٍ* *a king's daughter*. If this indeterminateness is to be especially marked, the genitive construction must be rejected, and the circumlocution

with **لِ** used, e. g. أَخٌ لَكُمْ *a brother of yours*. When an infinitive stands in the place of a finite verb, the subject or object of the sentence is in the dependent case of nouns, i. e. in the genitive, e. g. قَتْلُ زَيْدٍ *the killing of Zaid* i. e. *the circumstance that Zaid kills, or that Zaid is killed*. When the subject and object are expressed by the infinitive, the object remains in the accusative, e. g. مُدَاوَمَتُهُ شُرْبَ الْخَمْرِ *the circumstance that he continually indulged in the drinking of wine*; here too the circumlocution with **لِ** can be used, e. g. حُبِّي لِلْخَمْرِ *the circumstance that I am fond of wine*. If the infinitive is to remain undetermined before an object (e. g. in cases like § 82 d, &c.), the object can follow with **لِ** only, e. g. اِمْتَنَعُوا تَرْقِيًّا لِعُصَبِ عُثْمَانَ *they refused because they feared the wrath of 'Utmān*.

REM. This is the usage also if the participle is to remain undetermined (cf. e. g. §§ 81, 82 b), e. g. مَا زِلْتُ مُحِبًّا لِلْإِسْلَامِ *I have not ceased to be one who loves Islam*.

§ 88. Of particular kinds of Genitives the following may be noted here :

a. A general idea can be more nearly defined by a proper name following it in the genitive, e. g.

أَرْضُ الْيَمَنِ *the land of Yemen*.

b. A number of words of more general meaning frequently occur in connection with a genitive, though they are not necessarily determined by it, e. g. ذُو

possessor, ذُو مَالٍ *a possessor of money, a rich man*;

صَاحِبٌ *companion, possessor*, صَاحِبٌ عَقْلٍ *a sensible man*; أَهْلُ الدُّنْيَا *the people of the world, = worldly people*;

بَعْضُ *part*, e. g. بَعْضُ الْعُلَمَاءِ *one, some of the learned*, غَيْرٌ *prop. change, then another than*, e. g.

مَاتَ الْمَلِكُ فَمَلَكَ بَعْدَهُ غَيْرُهُ *there died the king then there ruled after him another than he*.

c. Instead of a genitive a finite verb can be placed in dependence on certain words denoting ideas of time and place, e. g. يَوْمَ قُتِلَ *on the day that he was killed*.

d. A peculiar kind of genitive relation is formed further by the so-called "improper annexation", by which an adjective or participle is defined by a following genitive, e. g. رَجُلٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ *a man handsome of countenance*. This construction is best rendered by a relative sentence, the subject of which is the

word defining the governing idea, i. e. *a man whose countenance is handsome*. In such a case the governing word is not determined by the following genitive; if it is to be determined it receives the article (against the rule § 87), e. g. الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ *the man handsome of countenance*, i. e. *whose countenance is handsome*.

§ 89. The genitive cannot be separated from its governing word, hence other words, e. g. adjectival additions to the latter, are placed after the genitive, e. g. بَيْتُ الْمَلِكِ الْوَاسِعُ *the spacious house of the king*. When a genitive according to our mode of expression belongs to two substantives, it is represented in Arabic with the latter substantive by a suffixed personal pronoun, e. g. سَيْفُ الْفَارِسِ وَرُمْحُهُ *the horseman's sword and lance* (prop. *the sword of the horseman and his lance*).

Chapter IV.

The simple sentence.

§ 90. Sentences are either *Nominal* or *Verbal sentences*. The verbal sentence always contains in the first place a finite verb; such a verb with the pronoun

inherent in it already constitutes a verbal sentence for itself (e. g. ضَرَبْتَ *thou hast struck*), by which the beginning of an activity (in a wider sense) is always denoted. If besides a particular exponent of the subject idea inherent in the verb is added, it is placed after the verb, e. g. ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ *there has struck Zaid*. On the other hand a nominal sentence consists of a nominal subject and (in the simplest instances) a nominal predicate and denotes bare being, e. g. زَيْدٌ غَنِيٌّ *Zaid is rich*.

§ 91. In regard to *verbal sentences*, the finite verb does not always agree in gender and number with the following subject. The following are the chief points to be noted:

a. Before a subject in the Fem. Sing. (when it does not follow immediately), before outer Plurals, Duals, &c., sometimes before inner Plurals, which denote male beings, — the verb stands for the most part in the Mas. Sing., e. g. أَقْبَلَ الْمُشْرِكُونَ *there approached the idolaters*.

b. Before broken Plurals, especially those which do not denote male living beings, the verb stands in the Fem. Sing., e. g. أَصَابَتْهُ الشَّدَائِدُ *there came upon*

him the misfortunes (though also *قَالَتِ الْعُلَمَاءُ* there spoke the learned).

REM. A subject unknown (or purposely unnamed) is best translated by the word "one" (Germ. *man*; French *on*), and is in Arabic expressed as follows:

a. By the 3. Sing. Passive, e. g. *سِيرَ* a journey has been undertaken, one journeyed.

b. By the 3. Plu. (or the 2. Sing.) Active, e. g. *قَالُوا* one said (cf. "they say", "people say", "you say").

c. By a subject (Participle), formed from the same stem, added to the verb, e. g. *قَالَ قَائِلٌ*, or *قَالَ الْقَائِلُ* there spake one.

§ 92. In a *Nominal sentence*, the subject is in most instances determined, the predicate undetermined. The predicate consists either of:

a. A simple noun, e. g. *زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ* Zaid is wise.

b. A preposition with its case, e. g. *الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ* the man is in the house.

c. A complete sentence, which can be (α) a verbal sentence, or (β) a nominal sentence; the whole sentence is then a compound one, e. g. (α) *زَيْدٌ مَرَضٌ* Zaid (he) is sick; (β) *زَيْدٌ مَرَضٌ أَبُوهُ* Zaid, his father is

sick; (٣) زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ مُسِنَّةٌ *Zaid his father is aged* (i. e. *Zaid's father &c.*).

§ 93. On the connection between subject and predicate in a nominal sentence the following should be noted:

a. The pronoun of the 3. person is as a rule (though not always) inserted between the subject and the predicate, when both are determinate, e. g. اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ *God is the Living one* (sometimes this pronoun is used simply to emphasize the subject).

b. In negative and interrogative sentences the predicate *precedes* the subject, e. g. أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ *where is Zaid?* مَا لَكُمْ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ *ye have no helper at all* (in which example مِنْ *(something, anything, of)*, strengthening the negative idea, has been added to the subject وَلِيٍّ). In like manner a predicate, consisting of a preposition with its case, precedes the subject, when the latter is indeterminate, and not more nearly defined by a qualificative, e. g. فِي الدَّارِ أَمْرَأَةٌ *in the house is a woman*.

c. If the subject of a nominal sentence is a demonstrative pronoun, it agrees in gender with the following predicate, e. g. هَذِهِ جَارِيَةٌ *this is a female slave*.

d. The predicate of مَا *not* (often also of لَيْسَ §§ 42; 81) is introduced by بِ, e. g. مَا هَذَا بِبَلِيٍّ *this is not a king*.

§ 94. In the relationship of subject and predicate the Arab places:

a. A thing and its measure, e. g. الْعَمُودُ ثَلَاثُونَ ذِرَاعًا *the column is 30 cubits (high)*.

b. A thing and its like, e. g. الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ الرِّبَا *the sale is the likeness of (like) usury*; also with لَ (§ 70 f.), which can likewise stand in every case.

c. A thing and its parts, e. g. مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ أَرْبَعٌ طَبَقَاتٍ *the kings of the Persians are (consist of) four classes*.

d. A thing and its material بَعْضُ الْأَصَابِعِ حَدِيدٌ *a part of the toes was (of) iron*, and a part of them (of) clay.

§ 95. a. A nominal sentence always follows إِنَّ (הִנֵּה) look and أَنَّ that (cf. § 71 c), likewise the compound particles لَكِنَّ (لَا كِنَّ) still, however, كَأَنَّ as if, لِأَنَّ because, and other combinations, as well as لَعَلَّ perhaps; the subject of this nominal sentence being placed in the accusative, e. g. إِنَّ زَيْدًا كَرِيمٌ *see*

(verily) *Zaid is generous*. In a nominal sentence of this kind the predicate, when it consists of a preposition with its case (cf. §§ 92b; 93b), precedes the subject, which is in the accusative, e. g. *إِنَّ فِي الْقَلْعَةِ سِجْنًا* *in the citadel is a prison*.

REM. The corroborative particle *لَ* (§ 70 g) is often prefixed to the predicate after a preceding *إِنَّ* e. g. *إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ* *verily our father is in error*, or to the subject, e. g. *إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً* *verily therein is an example*.

b. After the above named particles the pronoun of the 3. Sing. mas. as the so-called pronoun of the fact, is sometimes used for the subject; the predicate then consists of a complete sentence (cf. § 92 c), e. g. *إِنَّهُ لَا يُفْلِحُ الظَّالِمُونَ* *verily it is: not prosperous are the evil-doers*; *قِيلَ أَنَّهُ كَانَ لِمُحَمَّدٍ أَرْبَعُ جَوَارٍ* *it is narrated, that Muhammed had four female slaves*.

REM. *إِنَّ* introduces a fresh independent sentence, while a sentence which begins with *أَنَّ* always forms a part of another sentence, e. g. *أَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ* *dost thou not know that God is powerful above all?* In this instance the sentence beginning with *أَنَّ* is the object.

§ 96. As has been already remarked a dependent sentence forms an integral part of the principal sentence. Thus for instance in the sentence **يَنْبَغِي أَنْ** **تَفْعَلَ هَذَا**, the verbal sentence introduced by **أَنْ** is the subject of the verbal sentence consisting of **يَنْبَغِي**. Such dependent sentences also with **مَا** and the finite verb are of frequent occurrence, for according to the view of the Arabs this combination (like **أَنْ** with the finite verb) takes the place of an infinitive, e. g. **مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا = عَجِبْتُ مِمَّا (مِنْ مَا) ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا**: *I wonder at this that (at the circumstance, that) thou hast struck Zaid.*

§ 97. If in a nominal sentence several predicates stand instead of one, these are for the most part asyndetically connected, e. g. **إِنِّي حَفِيزٌ عَلِيمٌ** *I am attentive (and) well-informed*. This is the case with the predicates of the verb **كَانَ** (which frequently occurs as the substantive verb), and the verbs similar to it (its "sisters" as they are called, cf. § 81), e. g. **إِنَّ الْمَلَكَةَ تَصِيرُ آخِرَ الْوَقْتِ مُخْتَلِطَةً مُخْتَلِفَةً بَعْضُهَا** **قَوًى** *the kingdom will in the last time be*

mixed (and) torn 'by internal dissensions, (and) be one of which a part will be strong, and a part weak.

§ 98. After the exceptive particle **إِلَّا** that which is excepted stands in the accusative, when a positive sentence precedes, e. g. **جَاءَ النَّاسُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا** *there came the people, except Zaid*; when a negative sentence precedes that which is excepted stands more rarely in the accusative, but generally in the same case as that word which it limits, e. g. **مَا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ** *there came not the people, except Zaid*; **مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ** *I have passed no one, except Zaid*; **مَا ضَرَبْتُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا** *I have struck no one but 'Amr.*

Chapter V.

Compound sentences.

§ 99. *Relative sentences* are divided into those which are not added to a noun, and those which are qualificatives of a noun (cf. § 86 c).

a. Relative sentences not dependent on a noun are introduced by the inflected and always determinate word **الَّذِي** (cf. § 13 a) *the one, who; that, which, &c.*; or by the uninflected pronoun **مَنْ** (which is

sometimes determinate and sometimes indeterminate)
 = *the one, who; one, who; those, who; such, as* and مَا
 = *that, which; a thing, which*. Ex.: الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِنَا
 هُمُ أَصْحَابُ الْأَشْأَمَةِ *those, who despise our revelation*
those will be the people on the left hand (الَّذِينَ as the
 subject stands here in the Nom.); أَأَسْجُدُ لِمَنْ خَلَقْتَ
 طِينًا (the devil said) *shall I fall down before one,*
whom thou hast made of clay? (مَنْ stands here in the
 genitive); يَقُولُونَ بِأَفْوَاهِهِمْ مَا لَيْسَ بِقُلُوبِهِمْ *they say*
with their mouths a thing which is not in their hearts
 (مَا stands here in the accusative).

b. A relative sentence is added to a substantive
 by means of الَّذِي, only when the principal noun,
 with which الَّذِي has to agree in gender and number,
 is determinate, e. g. ضَرَبْتُ الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي جَاءَ *I struck*
the man who came. The reason of this is, because
 الَّذِي originally is not a relative in our sense but a
 demonstrative, and as such always determinate—the
 above sentence means really, *I struck this man here, he*
came. Hence on the other hand a relative sentence is
 added without الَّذِي when the principle noun is in-
 determinate, e. g. ضَرَبْتُ رَجُلًا جَاءَ *I struck a man,*

who came (where "who" is unexpressed in Arabic, prop. "a man, he came").

REM. It is only when the principal noun is merely generically determinate (cf. § 84 b) that **الَّذِي** is wanting, e. g. **كَمَثَلِ الْخِمَارِ يَحْمِلُ أَسْفَارًا** *like an (the) ass, which carries books*.

c. The relative sentence, which is properly only a nominal or verbal sentence added to the principal word, contains as a rule a pronoun referring to that word, e. g. **الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ غَنِيٌّ** *the man whose father is rich*; **كَانَ لَهُ ابْنٌ سَمِيَ مُحَمَّدًا** *he had a son, who was called Muhammed* (in this example the pronoun is contained in the verb); **رَجُلٌ يُقَالُ لَهُ زَيْدٌ** *a man, who is called Zaid* (prop. of whom is said (he is) Zaid).

REM. In relative sentences, which consist of a nominal sentence, a change is sometimes found, in that the predicate of the relative sentence is coordinated with the word qualified; in such a case the subject of the relative sentence however remains in the nominative, e. g. **رَأَيْتُ دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً أَلْوَانُهَا** *I found animals, of which the species were various* = **أَلْوَانُهَا مُخْتَلِفَةٌ**.

§ 100. *Sentences denoting a state or condition* form a special class of dependent sentences. A sentence denoting a state (Zustandssatz) consists of:

a. A nominal sentence introduced by the particle وَ, the subject of which has been already mentioned but can also be a fresh one مَاتَتْ وَهِيَ رَاجِعَةٌ إِلَى مَكَّةَ she died, while she was returning to Mecca; مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَأَبْنُهُ صَغِيرٌ Zaid died, while his son was still young; with a compound nominal sentence سَارَ وَهُوَ يَقْصِدُ الْمَدِينَةَ he journeyed, taking Medina as his goal.

b. Often also a verbal sentence; in this the Imperfect stands either alone, or with a preceding وَقَدْ; when it is a negative sentence either with لَا or وَمَا, or in the Jussive with لَمْ (as the negative of the Perfect): or the Perfect stands with وَقَدْ or وَكَانَ, when it is negated, with وَمَا, e. g. جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ Zaid came (as he was) laughing; قَالَ أَنَّى يَكُونُ لِي غُلَامٌ وَكَانَتْ أُمْرَاتِي عَاقِرًا وَقَدْ بَلَغْتُ مِنَ الْكِبَرِ عِتِيًّا he (Zacharias) said: how shall I have a son as my wife is barren and I have reached such a great age.

§ 101. In *temporal sentences*, formed by the particle إِذَا when, the perfect stands in the protasis in G*.

the sense of our present or future, e. g. إِذَا رَاضَ *when Dick does a thing its difficulties are easily surmounted*. مَا also in the meaning of "so long as" takes the perfect after it, e. g. مَا دُمْتُ *as long as I live, I am thankful*.

§ 102. In sentences containing a conditional idea, thus after the particles إِنْ *if*, مَنْ *if anyone*, مَا *if anything*, مَهْمَا *if ever anything*, كَيْفَ *how*, *how ever*, مَتَى *when*, &c., the Perfect stands in the protasis in the sense of the present or future; and in the apodosis also, e. g. إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ هَلَكَتَ *if thou doest that, thou wilt perish*; مَنْ جَالَ نَالَ *if one seeks, one finds*.

REM. If the Perfect is to retain its meaning in the protasis, the verb كَانَ is inserted after إِنْ, e. g. إِنْ كَانَ قَمِيصُهُ قَدْ مِنْ قُبُلٍ فَصَدَقَتْ *if his jacket has been torn in front, she has spoken the truth*.

§ 103. a. After these same particles the Jussive stands in the protasis and apodosis, e. g. إِنْ تَصْبِرُوا *if ye endure patiently, God will help you*.

b. The Jussive stands likewise in the apodosis to an imperative protasis, which expresses the meaning

of a conditional, e. g. *عِشْ قَنِعًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا* *live contentedly* (if thou livest contentedly), *then thou wilt be a king*.

c. The Perfect can also stand in the apodosis to a protasis which has the jussive, e. g. *إِنْ تَصْبِرْ ظَفِرْتَ* *if thou endurest patiently, thou wilt be victorious*. If the sentences are negative, *لَمْ* stands with the jussive, e. g. *إِنْ لَمْ يَبْرَحْ لَمْ أَرْضَ* *if he does not go away, I am not contented*.

REM. Sometimes the apodosis of a conditional sentence is omitted, e. g. *إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا* *if this is so; supply, it is well*.

§ 104. Before the apodosis of a conditional sentence the particle *فَ* is used:

a. when the apodosis is a nominal sentence, e. g. *إِنْ عَصَى فَوَيْلٌ لَهُ* *if he prove himself obstinate, then woe to him*; likewise before sentences with *إِنَّ*, and before interrogative sentences.

b. when the apodosis is a verbal sentence, the Perfect of which should keep the meaning of the perfect (cf. § 102 Rem.), especially when *قَدْ* is used (cf. § 73 e), e. g. *إِنْ أَسْلَمُوا فَقَدْ آهَتَدَوْا وَإِنْ*

تَوَلَّوْا فَإِنَّمَا عَلَيْكَ الْبَلَاغُ *if they become Muslims, they have come to the right path, and if they turn away, only the bringing of the message is laid upon thee.*

c. when the apodosis is a verbal sentence, which contains an imperfect with one of the particles سَوْفَ, لَنْ, or which expresses a command or wish, e. g. إِنْ كُنْتَ فِي قَوْمٍ فَأَحْلُبْ فِي إِنْثَاهِمِ *if thou findest thyself among people, then milk into their pail.*

PARADIGMATA.

—

TABULA I.

Paradigma flexionis verbi sani stirpis I.

Activum

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum					Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	Energ. I	Energ. II	
3. masc.	sing.	قَتَلَ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلَ	يَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	يَقْتُلْ
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتْ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلَ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ
2. masc.	"	قَتَلْتَ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلَ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ	تَقْتُلْ
2. fem.	"	قَتَلْتِ	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي
1.	"	قَتَلْتُ	أَقْتُلُ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ

3. masc.	dual.	قَتَلَا	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	اَقْتُلَا
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	
2.	"	قَتَلْتُمَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	
3. masc.	plur.	قَتَلُوا	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُوا	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	
3. fem.	"	قَتَلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	
2. masc.	"	قَتَلْتُمْ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُوا	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	اَقْتُلُوا
2. fem.	"	قَتَلْتُنَّ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	اَقْتُلْنَ
1.	"	قَتَلْنَا	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	

TABULA II.
Paradigma flexionis
Passivi I verbi sani

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus
3. masc.	sing.	قُتِلَ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتْ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتَ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتِ	تُقْتَلِينَ	تُقْتَلِي	تُقْتَلِي
1.	"	قُتِلْتُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ
3. masc.	dual.	قُتِلَا	يُقْتَلَانِ	يُقْتَلَا	يُقْتَلَا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
2.	"	قُتِلْتُمَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُتِلُوا	يُقْتَلُونَ	يُقْتَلُوا	يُقْتَلُوا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتُمْ	تُقْتَلُونَ	تُقْتَلُوا	تُقْتَلُوا
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتُنَّ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ
1.	"	قُتِلْنَا	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ

TABULA III.

Paradigma stirpium verbi quadrilitteralis.

Stirps	Genus	Perfectum	Imperfectum	Imperativus	Participium	Infinitivus
I	Act.	قَطَرَ	يَقْطِرُ	قَطِرْ	مَقْطِرٌ	قَطْرٌ
I	Pass.	قُطِرَ	يُقْطَرُ		مَقْطِرٌ	تَقَطَّرَ
II	Act.	تَقَطَّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ	تَقَطَّرْ	مَتَقَطِّرٌ	تَقَطُّرٌ
II	Pass.	تُقَطَّرَ	يَتُقَطَّرُ		مَتَقَطِّرٌ	

TABULA IV.

Paradigma stirpium verbi sani.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Perfectum Activi	قَتَلَ	قَتَلَ	قَاتَلَ	أَقْتَلَ	تَقَتَّلَ
Imperfectum "	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يُقَاتِلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يَتَقَتَّلُ
Imperativus "	أَقْتُلْ	قَتِّلْ	قَاتِلْ	أَقْتِلْ	تَقْتِلْ
Participium "	قَاتِلٌ	مَقْتُلٌ	مُقَاتِلٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مَتَقَتِّلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	قُتِلَ	قُتِلَ	قُوْتِلَ	أُقْتِلَ	تُقْتَلُ
Imperfectum "	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقَاتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يَتَقْتَلُ
Participium "	مَقْتُولٌ	مَقْتُلٌ	مُقَاتَلٌ	مُقْتَلٌ	مَتَقَتِّلٌ
Infinitivus	قَتْلٌ	تَقْتِيلٌ	مُقَاتَلَةٌ vel قِتَالٌ	إِقْتَالٌ	تَقْتِيلٌ

	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X
Perfectum Activi	تَقَاتَلَ	انْقَتَلَ	اِقْتَتَلَ	اِقْتَلَّ	اِسْتَقْتَلَّ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقَتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ	يَقْتَلُّ	يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Imperativus "	تَقَاتَلْ	انْقَتِلْ	اِقْتَتِلْ	اِقْتَلِّ	اِسْتَقْتِلْ
Participium "	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ	مَقْتَلٌ	مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	تُقَاتِلُ	انْقَتَلْ	اِقْتَتَلْ		اِسْتَقْتَلْ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقَتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ		يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Participium "	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ		مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Infinitivus	تَقَاتَلٌ	انْقَتَالٌ	اِقْتَتَالٌ	اِقْتِلَالٌ	اِسْتَقْتَالٌ

TABULA V.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		فَرَّ	يَفِرُّ	يَفِرَّ	يَفِرُّ (يَفِرَّ)	
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرُّ (تَفِرَّ)	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتَ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرُّ (تَفِرَّ)	اِفِرْ
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتَ	تَفِرِينَ	تَفِرِي	تَفِرِي	اِفِرِّي
1.	"	فَرَرْتُ	اَفِرُّ	اَفِرَّ	اَفِرُّ (اَفِرَّ)	
3. masc. dual.		فَرَا	يَفِرَانِ	يَفِرَّا	يَفِرَّا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَّا	تَفِرَّا	
2.	"	فَرَرْتُمَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَّا	تَفِرَّا	اِفِرَّا
3. masc. plur.		فَرَوْا	يَفِرُّونَ	يَفِرُّوا	يَفِرُّوا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَرْنَ	يَفِرُّونَ	يَفِرُّونَ	يَفِرُّونَ	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتُمْ	تَفِرُّونَ	تَفِرُّوا	تَفِرُّوا	اِفِرُّوا
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتُنَّ	تَفِرُّونَ	تَفِرُّونَ	تَفِرُّونَ	اِفِرُّونَ
1.	"	فَرَرْنَا	نَفِرُّ	نَفِرَّ	نَفِرُّ (نَفِرَّ)	

TABULA VI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		فُرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ (يُفَرِّ)
3. fem.	"	فُرِّت	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ etc.
2. masc.	"	فُرِّتَ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ
2. fem.	"	فُرِّتِ	تُفَرِّينَ	تُفَرِّى	تُفَرِّى
1.	"	فُرِّتُ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ
3. masc. dual.		فُرَّا	يُفَرَّانِ	يُفَرَّا	يُفَرَّا
3. fem.	"	فُرَّتَا	تُفَرَّانِ	تُفَرَّا	تُفَرَّا
2.	"	فُرِّتُمَا	تُفَرَّانِ	تُفَرَّا	تُفَرَّا
3. masc. plur.		فُرُّوا	يُفَرُّونَ	يُفَرُّوا	يُفَرُّوا
3. fem.	"	فُرِّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ
2. masc.	"	فُرِّرتُم	تُفَرُّونَ	تُفَرُّوا	تُفَرُّوا
2. fem.	"	فُرِّرتُنَّ	تُفَرُّرنَ	تُفَرُّرنَ	تُفَرُّرنَ
1.	"	فُرِّردَا	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ

TABULA VII

Paradigma stirpium verbi mediae geminatae contractarum.

	I	III	IV	VI	VII	VIII	X
Perfectum Activi	فَرَّ	فَارَّ	أَفَرَّ	تَفَارَّ	أَنَفَرَّ	اِفْتَرَّ	اِسْتَفَرَّ
Imperfectum "	يَفِرُّ	يَفَارُّ	يَفِرُّ	يَتَفَارُّ	يَنَفِرُّ	يَفْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
Imperativus "	اَفِرُّ	اَفَارُّ	اَفِرُّ	تَفَارُّ	اَنَفِرُّ	اِفْتَرُّ	اِسْتَفِرُّ
Participium "	فَارٌّ	مَفَارٌّ	مَفِرٌّ	مَتَفَارٌّ	مَنَفِرٌّ	مَفْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
Perfectum Passivi	فُرِّ	فُورُّ	أُفِرَّ	تُفُورُّ	أُنَفِرَّ	اُفْتَرَّ	اُسْتَفِرَّ
Imperfectum "	يُفَرُّ	يُفَارُّ	يُفَرُّ	يَتُفَارُّ	يَنُفِرُّ	يَفْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
Participium "	مُفَرٌّ	مُفَارٌّ	مُفِرٌّ	مَتَفَارٌّ	مَنَفِرٌّ	مَفْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
Infinitivus	فَرٌّ	فَرٌّ	اَفَرٌّ	تَفَرٌّ	اَنَفَرٌّ	اِفْتَرٌّ	اِسْتَفَرٌّ

TABULA VIII.

Paradigma flexionis verborum
prima radicalis , et ي

		Verbi pr. , Imperf. i	Verbi pr. , Imperf. a	Verbi pr. , sani	Verbi pr. ي
I. Perf.	Act.	وَصَلَ	وَدَعَ	وَسَخَ	يَسِرُ
	Imperf.	يَصِلُ	يَدَعُ	يُوسِخُ	يَيْسِرُ
	Imperat.	صِلْ	دَعْ	(أَوْسِنْ , اِجْلِ)	ايسِرْ
	Imperf. Pass.	يُوصَلُ	يُودَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يُوسَرُ
	Infinit.	صِلَةٌ	دَعَةٌ , وَدَعٌ	وَسَخٌ	يَسَرٌ
IV. Perf.	Act.	أَوَّصَلَ	أَوْدَعَ	أَوَّسَخَ	أَيَّسَرَ
	Imperf.	يُؤْصِلُ	يُؤْدِعُ	يُؤْوسِخُ	يُؤَيَّسِرُ
	Partic.	مُؤْصِلٌ	مُؤْدِعٌ	مُؤْوسِخٌ	مُؤَيَّسِرٌ
	Infinit.	إِئْصَالٌ	إِئْدَاعٌ	إِئْسَاخٌ	إِئْسَارٌ
III. Perf.	Act.	اِتَّصَلَ	اِتَّدَعَ	اِتَّسَخَ	اِتَّسَرَ
	Imperf.	يَتَّصِلُ	يَتَّدَعُ	يَتَّسِخُ	يَتَّسِرُ
	Perf. Pass.	اُتَّصَلَ	اُتَّدَعَ	اُتَّسِخَ	اُتَّسِرَ
X. Perf.	Act.	اِسْتَوْصَلَ	اِسْتَوْدَعَ	اِسْتَوْسَخَ	اِسْتَيَّسَرَ
	Infinit.	اِسْتِئْصَالٌ	اِسْتِئْدَاعٌ	اِسْتِئْسَاخٌ	اِسْتِئْسَارٌ

TABULA IX.

Paradigma flexionis
Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ,

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		قَالَ	يَقُولُ	يَقُولَ	يَقُلْ	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتْ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولَ	تَقُلْ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتَ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولَ	تَقُلْ	قُلْ
2. fem.	"	قُلْتِ	تَقُولِينَ	تَقُولِي	تَقُولِي	قُولِي
1.	"	قُلْتُ	أَقُولُ	أَقُولَ	أَقُلْ	
3. masc. dual.		قَالَا	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولَا	يَقُولَا	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	
2.	"	قُلْتُمَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	قُولَا
3. masc. plur.		قَالُوا	يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولُوا	يَقُولُوا	
3. fem.	"	قُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتُمْ	تَقُولُونَ	تَقُولُوا	تَقُولُوا	قُولُوا
2. fem.	"	قُلْتُنَّ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	قُلْنَ
1.	"	قُلْنَا	نَقُولُ	نَقُولَ	نَقُلْ	

TABULA X.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ی

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indicati- vus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus	
3. masc. sing.		سَارَ	يَسِيرُ	يَسِيرَ	يَسِرْ	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	
2. masc.	"	سِرَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	سِرْ
2. fem.	"	سِرَتْ	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِي	سِيرِي
1.	"	سِرْتُ	أَسِيرُ	أَسِيرَ	أَسِرْ	
3. masc. dual.		سَارَا	يَسِيرَانِ	يَسِيرَا	يَسِيرَا	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	
2.	"	سِرْتُمَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	سِيرَا
3. masc. plur.		سَارُوا	يَسِيرُونَ	يَسِيرُوا	يَسِيرُوا	
3. fem.	"	سِرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	
2. masc.	"	سِرْتُمْ	تَسِيرُونَ	تَسِيرُوا	تَسِيرُوا	سِيرُوا
2. fem.	"	سِرْتُنَّ	تَسِيرْنَ	تَسِيرْنَ	تَسِيرْنَ	سِرْنَ
1.	"	سِرْنَا	نَسِيرُ	نَسِيرَ	نَسِرْ	

TABULA XI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae radicalis و vel ي

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		دِيمَ	يُدَامُ	يُدَامَ	يُدَمْ
3. fem.	"	دِيَمَتْ	تُدَامُ	تُدَامَ	تُدَمْ
2. masc.	"	دِمَتَ	تُدَامُ	تُدَامَ	تُدَمْ
2. fem.	"	دِمَتِ	تُدَامِينَ	تُدَامِي	تُدَامِي
1.	"	دِمْتُ	أُدَامُ	أُدَامَ	أُدَمْ
3. masc. dual.		دِيَمَا	يُدَامَانِ	يُدَامَا	يُدَامَا
3. fem.	"	دِيَمَتَا	تُدَامَانِ	تُدَامَا	تُدَامَا
2.	"	دِمْتُمَا	تُدَامَانِ	تُدَامَا	تُدَامَا
3. masc. plur.		دِيَبُوا	يُدَامُونَ	يُدَامُوا	يُدَامُوا
3. fem.	"	دِمْنَ	يُدَمْنَ	يُدَمْنَ	يُدَمْنَ
2. masc.	"	دِمْتُمْ	تُدَامُونَ	تُدَامُوا	تُدَامُوا
2. fem.	"	دِمْتُنَّ	تُدَمْنَ	تُدَمْنَ	تُدَمْنَ
1.	"	دِمْنَا	نُدَامُ	نُدَامَ	نُدَمْ

TABULA XII.

Paradigma stirpium verborum mediae ى et irregularium.

	I	I	I	IV	VII	VIII	IX
	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.
	فَعَلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعَلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعِلَ
Perfect. Act.	قَالَ	خَافَ	سَارَ	أَقَادَ	اَنْقَادَ	اَقْتَادَ	اَسْتَقَادَ
(II. P. masc. S.	قُلْتَ	خَفْتَ	سَرْتَ	اَقَدْتَ	اَنْقَدْتَ	اَقْتَدْتَ	اَسْتَقَدْتَ
Imperf. "	يَقُولُ	يَخَافُ	يَسِيرُ	يُقِيدُ	يَنْقَادُ	يَقْتَادُ	يَسْتَقِيدُ
Imperat. "	قُلْ	خَفْ	سِرْ	اِقْدْ	اَنْقَدْ	اَقْتَدْ	اَسْتَقَدْ
Particip. "	قَائِلٌ	خَائِفٌ	سَائِرٌ	مُقِيدٌ	مَنْقَادٌ	مَقْتَادٌ	مَسْتَقِيدٌ
Perfect. Pass.	قِيلَ	جُفِيَ	سِيرَ	اُقِيدَ	اُنْقِيدَ	اُقْتِيدَ	اُسْتَقِيدَ
Imperf. "	يُقَالُ	يُخَافُ	يُسَارُ	يُقَادُ	يَنْقَادُ	يَقْتَادُ	يَسْتَقَادُ
Particip. "	مَقُولٌ	مُخَوِّفٌ	مَسِيرٌ	مُقَادٌ	مَنْقَادٌ	مَقْتَادٌ	مَسْتَقَادٌ
Infinitivus	قَوْلٌ	خَوْفٌ	سَيْرٌ	اِقَادَةٌ	اِنْقِيَادٌ	اِقْتِيَادٌ	اِسْتِقَادَةٌ

TABULA XIII.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae (فَعَلَ)

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		Impera- tivus
			Indica- tivus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		عَزَا	يَعْزُو	يَعْزُو	يَعْزُ
3. fem.	"	عَزَتْ	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُ
2. masc.	"	عَزَوْتَ	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُو	تَعْزُ
2. fem.	"	عَزَوْتَ	تَعْزِينَ	تَعْزِي	تَعْزِي
1.	"	عَزَوْتُ	أَعْزُو	أَعْزُو	أَعْزُ
3. masc. dual.		عَزَا	يَعْزَوَانِ	يَعْزَوَا	يَعْزُوا
3. fem.	"	عَزَتَا	تَعْزَوَانِ	تَعْزَوَا	تَعْزُوا
2.	"	عَزَوْتُمَا	تَعْزَوَانِ	تَعْزَوَا	تَعْزُوا
3. masc. plur.		عَزَا	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُوا	يَعْزُوا
3. fem.	"	عَزَوْنَ	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُونَ	يَعْزُونَ
2. masc.	"	عَزَوْتُمْ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُوا	تَعْزُوا
2. fem.	"	عَزَوْتُنَّ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُونَ	تَعْزُونَ
1.	"	عَزَوْنَا	نَعْزُو	نَعْزُو	نَعْزُ

TABULA XIV.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae (فَعَلَ) ي

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		Impera- tivus
			Indica- tivus	Subjunc- tivus	Jussivus
3. masc. sing.		رَمَى	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِ
3. fem.	"	رَمَتْ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ اَرْمِ
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي اَرْمِي
1.	"	رَمَيْتُ	أَرْمِي	أَرْمِي	أَرْمِ
3. masc. dual.		رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَا
3. fem.	"	رَمَتَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا
2.	"	رَمَيْتُمَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا اَرْمِيَا
3. masc. plur.		رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُوا
3. fem.	"	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتُمْ	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمُوا اَرْمُوا
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتُنَّ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ اَرْمِينَ
1.	"	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِ

TABULA XV.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbis ultimae , vel ى (فَعِلَ)

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	
3. masc. sing.		رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَ
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ اِرْضَ
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى اِرْضَى
1.	"	رَضِيتُ	أَرْضَى	أَرْضَى	أَرْضَ
3. masc. dual.		رَضِيَا	يَرْضَيَانِ	يَرْضَيَا	يَرْضَيَا
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا
2.	"	رَضَيْتُمَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا اِرْضَيَا
3. masc. plur.		رَضُوا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْا
3. fem.	"	رَضِينَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتُمْ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْا اِرْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتُنَّ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ اِرْضَيْنَ
1.	"	رَضِينَا	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَ

TABULA XVI.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi ultimae و نى vel

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Jussivus
3. masc.	sing.	قُضِيَ	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَ
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتْ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتَ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتِ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى
1.	"	قُضِيتُ	أُقْضَى	أُقْضَى	أُقْضَ
3. masc.	dual.	قُضِيََا	يُقْضَيَانِ	يُقْضَيَا	يُقْضَيَا
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
2.	"	قُضِيْتُمَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُضُوا	يُقْضَوْنَ	يُقْضَوْا	يُقْضَوْا
3. fem.	"	قُضِينَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيتُمْ	تُقْضَوْنَ	تُقْضَوْا	تُقْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتُنَّ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ
1.	"	قُضِينَا	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَ

TABULA XVII.

Paradigma stirpium verborum ultimae et ی

	I verbi ult. و فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. ی فَعَّلَ	I verbi ult. و فَعَّلَ ی	II verbi ult. و ی	III verbi ult. و ی	IV verbi ult. و ی
Perfectum Activi	عَرَا	رَمَى	رَضَى	قَضَى	قَاضَى	اَقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَعْرِو	يَرْمِي	يَرْضَى	يَقْضِي	يُقَاضِي	يُقْضَى
Imperativus "	اعْرِ	ارْمِ	ارْضِ	قْضِ	قَاضِ	اَقْضِ
Participium "	عَارٍ	رَامٍ	رَاضٍ	مَقْضٍ	مَقَاضٍ	مَقْضٍ
Perfectum Passivi	عُرِيَ	رُمِيَ	رُضِيَ	قُضِيَ	قُوضِيَ	اُقْضِيَ
Imperfectum "	يُعْرَى	يُرْمَى	يَرْضَى	يَقْضَى	يُقَاضَى	يُقْضَى
Participium "	مَعْرُورٌ	مَرْمُورٌ	مَرِضُورٌ	مَقْضُورٌ	مَقَاضُورٌ	مَقْضُورٌ
Infinitivus "	عُرُو	رُمُو	رُضُو	قُضُورٌ	قُضَا vel	اَقْضَا
						مَقَاضَا

	V verbi ult. , vel ی	VI verbi ult. , vel ی	VII verbi ult. , vel ی	VIII verbi ult. , vel ی	X verbi ult. , vel ی
Perfectum Activi	تَقَضَّى	تَقَاضَى	انْقَضَى	اِقْتَضَى	اِسْتَقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَضَّى	يَتَقَاضَى	يَنْقَضَى	يَقْتَضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Imperativus "	تَقْضُ	تَقَاضُ	انْقُضْ	اِقْضُ	اِسْقُضْ
Participium "	مَنْقُضٌ	مَتَقَاضٍ	مَنْقُضٌ	مَقْضٍ	مَسْتَقْضٍ
Perfectum Passivi	تَقْضِيَ	تَقْوِضِي	انْقَضِيَ	اِقْتَضِيَ	اِسْتَقْضِيَ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقْضَى	يَتَقَاضَى	يَنْقَضَى	يَقْتَضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Participium "	مَنْقُضِي	مَتَقَاضِي	مَنْقُضِي	مَقْضِي	مَسْتَقْضِي
Infinitivus	تَقْضٍ	تَقَاضٍ	انْقِضَاءٌ	اِقْتِضَاءٌ	اِسْتِقْضَاءٌ

TABULA XVIII.

Paradigma flexionis nominis

a) generis masculini

α) triptoti

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.	قَصَابٌ	الْقَصَابُ	قَصَابٌ
Gen.	قَصَابٍ	الْقَصَابِ	قَصَابٍ
Acc.	قَصَابًا	الْقَصَابَ	قَصَابَ
Dual Nom.	قَصَابَانِ	الْقَصَابَانِ	قَصَابَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابَيْنِ	الْقَصَابَيْنِ	قَصَابَيَّ
Plur. Nom.	قَصَابُونَ	الْقَصَابُونَ	قَصَابُوا (قَصَابُوا)
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابِينَ	الْقَصَابِينَ	قَصَابِيَّ

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	آخِرٌ	الْآخِرُ	آخِرٌ
Gen.	آخِرٍ	الْآخِرِ	آخِرٍ
Acc.	آخَرَ	الْآخَرَ	آخَرَ
Dual Nom.	آخِرَانِ	الْآخِرَانِ	آخِرَا
Gen.-Acc.	آخِرَيْنِ	الْآخِرَيْنِ	آخِرَيَّ

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Plur. Nom.	آخِرُونَ	الْآخِرُونَ	آخِرُوا (آخِرُونَ)
Gen.-Acc.	آخِرِينَ	الْآخِرِينَ	آخِرَى

TABULA XIX.

b) generis feminini

α) triptoti

Sing. Nom.	سَاعَةٌ	السَّاعَةُ	سَاعَةٌ
Gen.	سَاعَةٍ	السَّاعَةِ	سَاعَةٍ
Acc.	سَاعَةً	السَّاعَةَ	سَاعَةً
Dual Nom.	سَاعَتَانِ	السَّاعَتَانِ	سَاعَتَا
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَتَيْنِ	السَّاعَتَيْنِ	سَاعَتَي
Plur. Nom.	سَاعَاتُ	السَّاعَاتُ	سَاعَاتُ
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَاتٍ	السَّاعَاتِ	سَاعَاتٍ

β) diptoti.

Sing. Nom.	مِئَةٌ	ceterum idem
Gen.-Acc.	مِئَةٍ	

TABULA XX.

c) generis masculini in ‏ desinentis.

	indeter- minati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.-Gen.	قَاضٍ	القَاضِي	قَاضِي
Acc.	قَاضِيًا	القَاضِيَّ	قَاضِيَّ
Dual Nom.	قَاضِيَانِ	القَاضِيَانِ	قَاضِيَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِيَيْنِ	القَاضِيَيْنِ	قَاضِيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	قَاضُونَ	القَاضُونَ	قَاضُوا (قَاضُوا)
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِينَ	القَاضِينَ	قَاضِي

d) nominis in ‏, ‏ desinentis.

α) triptoti.

Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	مُصْطَفَى	المُصْطَفَى	مُصْطَفَى
Dual Nom.	مُصْطَفِيَانِ	المُصْطَفِيَانِ	مُصْطَفِيَا
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	المُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	مُصْطَفَوْنَ	المُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفَوْ (مُصْطَفَوْا)
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيْنَ	المُصْطَفَيْنَ	مُصْطَفَئِ

	indeter- minati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	عَصَا	الْعَصَا	عَصَا
Dual Nom.	عَصَوَانِ	الْعَصَوَانِ	عَصَوَا
	β) diptoti.		
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	ذِكْرَى	الذِّكْرَى	ذِكْرَى
id.	ذُنْيَا	الدُّنْيَا	ذُنْيَا

TABULA XXI.

Paradigma nominis cum suffixis.

a) nominis masc. in singulari positi قَصَّابٌ; fem. جَارِيَةٌ.

cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.	جَارِيَتِي fem.	قَصَّابِي
" " 2. " " masc.	قَصَّابُكَ	
" " 2. " " fem.	قَصَّابُكِ	
" " 3. " " masc.	قَصَّابُهُ (gen. قَصَّابِهِ)	
" " 3. " " fem.	قَصَّابُهَا	
" " 2. " dualis	قَصَّابُكُمَا	
" " 3. " "	قَصَّابُهُمَا (gen. قَصَّابِيهِمَا)	
" " 1. " pluralis	قَصَّابِنَا	
" " 2. " " msc.	قَصَّابُكُمْ	
" " 2. " " fem.	قَصَّابُكُنَّ	
" " 3. " " msc.	قَصَّابُهُمْ (gen. قَصَّابِيَهُمْ)	
" " 3. " " fem.	قَصَّابُهُنَّ (gen. قَصَّابِيَهُنَّ)	

b) *nominis in duali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo	1. pers. sing.	قَصَابَايَ
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابَاكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	1. "	قَصَابَايَ
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابَايْكَ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" قَصَابَايْهِ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" fem. قَصَابَايْهَا etc.

c) *nominis masculini in plurali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo	1. pers. sing.	قَصَابِي
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابُوكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	1. "	قَصَابِي
"	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. قَصَابِيْكَ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" msc. قَصَابِيْهِ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" fem. قَصَابِيْهَا etc.

d) *nominis feminini in plurali positi.*

Nom.-Gen.-Acc. cum suff.	1. pers. sing.	سَاعَاتِي
Nominativus	"	"
"	2. "	" msc. سَاعَاتِكَ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" " سَاعَاتِهِ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	2. "	" سَاعَاتِكَ
"	"	"
"	3. "	" " سَاعَاتِهِ etc.

LITTERATURA ARABICA.

LITTERATURA.

Arabum litteratura ingens; at permulti libri per saecula amissi; magna pars in bibliothecis exstat, de quibus catalogos manuscriptorum licet consulere. E librorum impressorum numero, quorum multi in Oriente imprimis Bülaki prope a Cahira in lucem prodierunt, quosdam hic enumerare placuit. Tituli librorum quos tironibus praeceteris commendare juvat, crucibus notati, opera illustriora asteriscis insignita. Scriptorum inclytorum nominibus annum mortis (exempli gratia: 646 H., inc. 26. apr. 1248, h. e. anno Hejrae 646, qui incipit die etc.) addidimus. — De libris nuper in Oriente impressis conf. „Perthes, Verzeichnis der von mir aus dem Orient eingeführten arabischen Bücher“; sive „E. J. Brill, Catalogue périodique de livres orientaux“.

A. HISTORIA LITTERARIA.

† Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. I. contenant les livres arabes, persans et turcs imprimés depuis l'invention de l'imprimerie jusqu'à nos jours tant en Europe qu'en Orient etc. par *J. Th. Zenker*. Leipzig 1846. — Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. II. contenant 1. supplément du premier volume. 2. Littérature de l'Orient chrétien. 3. Littérature de l'Inde etc. Par *J. Th. Zenker*. Leipzig 1861.

† (Euting) Katalog der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek in Strassburg. Arabische Literatur. Strassburg 1877. 4^o.

Literaturgeschichte der Araber. Von ihrem Beginne bis zu Ende des zwölften Jahrhunderts der Hidschret. Von *Hammer-Purgstall*. 7 Bände. Wien 1850—56 (quod opus, cum auctoris iudiciis non raro errores sint admixti, lectorem diligentem criticum requirit).

* Lexicon bibliographicum et encyclopaedicum a Mustapha ben Abdallah Katib Jelebi dicto et nomine *Haji Khalifa* († 1658) celebrato compositum. Ad codicum Vindobonensium Parisiensium et Beroli-

nensis fidem primum edidit latine verit et commentario indicibusque instruxit *Gustavus Flügel*. Leipzig-London 1835—1858. 7 vol. 4^o.

* *Kitāb al-Fihrist* (auct. Ibn abi Ya'kūb al-nadīm; scripsit anno 377 H. inc. 3 mai. 987) mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Gustav Flügel*. Nach dessen Tode besorgt von *Johannes Rödiger* und *August Müller*. Zwei Bände. Leipzig 1871—2.

The biographical dictionary of illustrious men chiefly at the beginning of Islamism by Abu Zakariya Jahya el-Nawawi († 676 H. = 1277) edited by *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1842—47 (conf. über das Leben und die Schriften des . . . el-Nawawi idem. Göttingen 1849. aus dem vierten Bande der Abhandl. d. kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Gött.).

* *Ibn Chalikān*, Vitae illustrium virorum. E codd. nunc primum arabice edidit variis lectionibus. indicibusque locupletissimis instruxit *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingae 1835—40, 4^o. — Ibn Ḥallikān († 681 H., inc. 11 apr. 1282) 2. vol. Bulak 1275; alt. ed. 1299. — Ibn Khallikan's biographical dictionary, translated from the arabic by Baron *Mac Guckin de Slane*. 4 vol. Paris-London 1843—71. 4^o.

B. CHRESTOMATHIAE.

† Chrestomathia arabica quam e libris Mss. vel impressis rarioribus collectam edidit *Fr. A. Arnold*. Pars I. Textum continens. Pars II. Glossarium continens. Halis 1853.

† Chrestomathie élémentaire de l'Arabe littéral avec un glossaire par *H. Dérenbourg* et *J. Spiro*. Paris 1885.

† Chrestomathie Arabe, ou extraits de divers écrivains Arabes, tant en prose qu'en vers à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; par *A. J. Sylvestre de Sacy*. II. éd. corr. et augm. Paris 1827. 3 vol.; Tome IV Anthologie grammaticale arabe. Paris 1829.

Joh. Godofr. Lud. Kosegartenii Chrestomathia arabica ex codicibus manuscriptis Paris. Goth. et Berol. collecta atque tum adscriptis vocalibus, cum additis lexico et adnotationibus explanata. Lipsiae 1828.

Georg. Guil. Freytag, Chrestomathia arabica, grammatica historica in usum scholarum Arabicarum ex codd. ineditis conscripta. 8^o maj. Bonnae 1834.

- Thier und Mensch vor dem König der Genien. Ein arabisches Märchen aus den Schriften der lauterer Brüder in Basra im Urtext herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Ausgabe. Leipzig 1881. — Arabisch-deutsches Wörterbuch zum Koran und Thier und Mensch von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig, 1881.
- Girgass et de Rosen*. Arabische Chrestomathie. St. Petersburg 1875. 1876 (russice).
- An arabic reading-book compiled by *W. Wright*. Part first, The texts. London 1870.

C. OPERA GRAMMATICA etc.

a ab Orientalibus conscripta (conf. de intiis studii grammatici apud Arabes:

- * Die grammatischen Schulen der Araber nach den Quellen bearbeitet von *G. Flügel*. Erste Abthl. Leipzig 1862. Abhandlungen der Deutschen Morgenl. Ges. II. Band. Nr. 4.)
- * *al-Muzhir fī 'ulūm el-luġa*, Encyclopaedia philologica auctore Jalāl al-dīn al-Suyūfī († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505). Bulak 1282.
- * Le livre de Sibawīhi, traité de grammaire arabe par Sibōūya, dit *Sibawaihi* († 180 H., inc. 16 mart. 796). Texte arabe publié d'après les manuscrits du Caire, de l'Escorial, d'Oxford, de Paris, de St. Pétersbourg et de Vienne par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Tome I. Paris 1881.
- * *Al-Mufaṣṣal*, opus de re grammatica arabicum auctore Abu 'l-Kāsim Mahmūd bin 'Omar Zamaḥṣario (*al-Zamaḥṣari* † 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143) ed *J. P. Broch*. Editio altera. Christianiae 1879. — Adde: *Ibn Ja'īš* († 643 H., inc. 29 mai. 1245) Commentar zu Zamaḥṣari's *Mufaṣṣal*. Nach den Handschriften u. s. w. herausgeg. u. s. w. von Dr. *G. Jahn*. Erster Band. Leipzig, 1882. (Zweiter Band. 1 Heft. Leipzig 1883.)
- * *Alfijjah*, Carmen didacticum grammaticum auctore Ibn Mālik († 672 H., inc. 18 jul. 1273) et in *Alfijjam* commentarius quem conscripsit Ibn Akīl (Ibn 'Akīl † 769 H., inc. 28 aug. 1367) ed. *Fr. Dieterici*. Lipsiae 1851. — Ibn 'Akīl's Commentar zur *Alfijja* des Ibn Malik aus dem Arabischen zum ersten male übersetzt von *Fr. Dieterici*. Berlin 1852.
- al-Ajurrūmijja*, grammatica arabica auctore *Ibn Ajurrūm al-Sinhājī* († 732 H., inc. 10 jun. 1323). Sexcenties impr. (Erpenii cura Leidae 1617) praesertim in Oriente cum commentariis.

Kāfija fi-lnahū. syntaxis auctore *Ibn al-Hājib* († 626 H., inc. 26 apr. 1248). Sexcenties impr. in Oriente.

3 ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

† Dr. C. P. Caspari's Arabische Grammatik. Vierte Auflage bearbeitet von *August Müller*. Halle 1876. — Grammaire arabe de C. P. Caspari traduite de la quatrième édition allemande et en partie remaniée par *E. Uricoechea*. Bruxelles 1880. — A Grammar of the Arabic Language translated from the German of Caspari and edited, with numerous additions and corrections by *W. Wright*. 2 ed. 2 vol. London 1874. 5.

Geo. Henrici Aug. Ewald. Grammatica critica linguae arabicae cum brevi metrorum doctrina. Lipsiae 1831—1833. II vol.

Grammaire arabe à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; avec figures. Par *M. le B^{on} Silvestre de Sacy*. Seconde édition. corrigée et augmentée, à laquelle on a joint un traité de la prosodie et de la métrique des Arabes. 2 tom. Paris 1831. — Ad hoc opus complendum et ex parte emendandum pertinent *Fleischeri*

† „Beiträge zur arabischen Sprachkunde“: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Philologisch-historische Classe. 1863 (p. 93 ss.); 1864 (p. 265 ss.); 1866 (p. 286 ss.); 1870 (p. 227 ss.); 1874 (p. 71 ss.); 1876 (p. 44 ss.); 1878 (p. 65 ss.); 1880 (p. 89 ss.); 1881 (p. 117 ss.); 1883 (p. 72 ss.); conf. 1856 (p. 1 ss.); 1862 (p. 10 ss.)

J. G. L. Kosegarten. Grammatica linguae arabicae p. 1—688, sine titulo et anno, incompl. (liber rarissimus.)

Mortimer Sloper Howell. A Grammar of the Classical Arabic Language, translated and compiled from the Works of the most Approved or Naturalized Authorities. Published under the authority of the Government, N.-W.-Provinces. In an introduction and Four Parts. 3 tomi. Allahabad 1880. 1883.

Darstellung der arabischen Verskunst mit sechs Anhängen u. s. w. nach handschriftlichen Quellen bearbeitet und mit Registern versehen von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1830.

Théorie nouvelle de la métrique arabe précédée de considérations générales sur le rythme naturel du langage par *M. Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1875 (Extrait du Journal asiatique).

Die Rhetorik der Araber nach den wichtigsten Quellen dargestellt und mit angeführten Textauszügen nebst einem literaturgeschichtlichen Anhang versehen, von *Dr. A. F. Mehren*. Kopenhagen 1853.

D. LEXICA.

α ab Orientalibus conscripta.

- **Ṣaḥāḥ al-ʿarabiyye* (sive *al-Ṣaḥāḥ*) auct. *al-Jauharī* (Abū Naṣr Ismāʿīl ibn Ḥammād † 393 H., inc. 10 nov. 1002). 2 vol. Bulak 1282.
- **al-Kāmūs al-muḥīt* (vel *al-Kāmūs*) auctore *al-Firūzābādī* († 816 vel 817 H. = 1413/4.) 2 vol. Calcutta 1817; editio optima vocalibus notata 4 vol. Bulak 1279. — Turcice explanatus 3 vol. Stambul 1272 et al. — Commentarium cui titulus est *Tāj el-ʿarūs* scripsit *Sayyid Murtaḍā al-Zubaidī* († 1205 H., inc. 10 Sept. 1790). 5 vol. (ad finem ʿain) Cairo, 1286/7.
- Muḥīt al-muḥīt*, auctore *Buṭrus al-Bistānī*. 2 vol. Beirut 1286. (1869/70).
- Fikḥ al-luḡa*, opus synonymicum, auctore *al-Taʿālībī* († 429 H., inc. 14 oct. 1037.) Cairo (saepius impressum).
- **Gawālīkī's al-Muʿarrab* (opus de vocibus peregrinis auctore *al-Jawālīkī* † 465 H., inc. 17 Sept. 1072). Nach der Leydener Handschrift mit Erläuterungen herausgegeben von *Ed. Sachau*. Leipzig 1867.
- **Asās al-balāḡa* (opus lexicogr. imprimis verborum sensum tropicum exhibens) auctore *al-Zamahṣārī* († 538 H., inc. 16 juli 1143). 2 vol. Bulak 1299.
- Liber as-Sojutii* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505) de nominibus relativis, inscriptus *Lubb al-lubāb*, arab. cum annot. crit. ed. *P. J. Veth*. 1—3. Lugduni Bat. 1840—51. 4^o.
- **Al-Moschtabih* auctore *Schamso'ddīn Abu Abdallah Mohammed ibn Ahmed ad-Dhahabī* (*al-Dahabī* † 748 H., inc. 13 apr. 1347). E codd. mss. editus a *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Batav. 1881. (De nominibus propriis homonymis).

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- † *G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum* praesertim ex *Djeuharii Firuzabadique* et aliorum libris confectum. Accedit index vocum latinarum locupletissimus. IV Tomi. Hal. 1830—1837. 4^o maj.
- G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicum Arabico-Latinum* ex opere suo majore in usum tironum excerptum edidit. Halis 1836. 4^o maj.
- **Maddu-l-Kāmūs*, an arabic-english *Lexicon* derived from the best and the most copious eastern sources comprising a very large collection of words and significations omitted in the *Kamoos*, with

supplements to its abridged and defective explanations, ample grammatical and critical comments, and examples in prose and verse: composed by means of the munificence of the most noble Algernon, Duke of Northumberland etc. etc. and the bounty of the British Government: by *Edward William Lane*. In two books: the first containing all the classical words and significations commonly known to the learned among the Arabs; the second, those that are of rare occurrence and not commonly known. Book I, Part. 1—5. London 1863—1874; ed. by Stanley Lane Poole, Part 6—7, fasc. 1. 2. 3 *ibid.* — 1884 (J).

* *Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes* par *R. Dozy*. 2 tom. Leyde 1881. — *Conf. Fleischer*, *Studien über Dozy's Supplément: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächs. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Leipzig. Philol.-histor. Classe* 1881 (p. 1 ss.), 1882. 1884.

A. Kazimirski de Biberstein. Dictionnaire arabe-français I. II. Paris. 1860.

Vocabulaire arabe-français (Cuche). Beyrouth 1883.

† *A. Wahrmund*, *Handwörterbuch der deutschen und neu-arabischen Sprache. I. Neu-arabisch-deutscher Theil I, 1. 2. II, 1. 2. — II Deutsch-neu-arabischer Theil. Giessen 1870—77.*

Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les Arabes. Par R. Dozy. Amsterdam 1845.

* *Glossaire des mots espagnols et portugais dérivés de l'Arabe* par *R. Dozy et W. H. Engelmann. 2. éd. Leyde 1869.*

E. KORANICA, ISLAMICA, VITAE MUHAMMEDII.

a ab Orientalibus conscripta.

Al-Coranus seu Lex islamitica Muhammedis filii Abdallae Pseudophrophetae edita ex museo Abrahami Hinckelmanni. Hamburgi 1694.

Alcorani textus universus summa fide atque pulcherrimis characteribus descriptus, in latinum translatus, oppositis notis, auctore Ludovico Marraccio. Patavii 1698 fol.

Corani textus arabicus ad fidem librorum manuscriptorum et impressorum et ad praecipuorum interpretum lectiones et auctoritatem recensuit indicesque triginta sectionum et suratarum addidit Gus-

tavus Flügel. Editio stereotypa C. Tauchnitzii. Tertium emendata; nova impressio † Lipsiae 1869 (I. 1834; recensiois Flügelianae textum recognitum iterum exprimi curavit *Gustavus Mauritius Redslob*, Lipsiae 1837). — Conf. † Concordantiae Corani arabicae. Ad litterarum ordinem et verbarum radices diligenter disposuit *Gustavus Flügel*. Editio stereotypa. Lipsiae 1842.

* *al-Itkân fî 'ulûm al-kur'ân*, opus de rebus coranicis auctore *al-Suyûtî* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505); 2 part. Cairo 1278. — Sayûty's Itqân on the exegetic sciences of the Qor'an. Edited by Mowlawies Basheerooddeen and Noorool-Haqq with an analysis by A. Sprenger. Calcutta 1852—54.

al-Kaššâf. Commentarius in Koranum auctore *al-Zamakhshari* († 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143). 2 vol. Bulak 1281. — The Qoran with the commentary of Zamakhshari entitled the Kashshaf an haqaiq al-tanzil, ed. by *W. Nassau Lees* and *Khadim Hosain* and 'Abd al Hayi. Calcutta 1856.

* *Beidhawî* († 685 H., inc. 27 febr. 1286; vel 692) commentarius in Coranum ex codd. Parisiensibus Dresdensibus et Lipsiensibus edidit indicibusque instruxit *H. O. Fleischer*. 2 vol. Lipsiae 1846—48. — Indices ad Beidhawî commentarium in Coranum confecit *Winand Fell*. Leipzig 1878.

* *Le Recueil des traditions musulmanes par Abou Abdallah ibn Ismail al-Bokhari* (al-Buhârî † 257 H., inc. 29 nov. 870.) publié par *L. Krehl*. I—III Léyde 1862—68. — Saepius impressum sine vel cum adjectis commentariis.

Ṣaḥîḥ Muslim. Collectio traditionum prophetae auctore Muslim († 261 H., inc. 16 oct. 874). Cum commentario *al-Nawawî* († 676 H., inc. 4 jun. 1277) 5 vol. Cairo 1283.

Ihyâ al-'ulûm, opus theologicum auctore al-Ġazālî († 505 H., inc. 10 jul. 1111). Bulak 1289. — (Conf. Richard Gosche, Über Ghazzâlîs Leben und Werke: Abhdl. d. kgl. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Berlin 1858.)

* *Das Leben Muhammeds nach Muhammed ibn Ishâk* († 151 H., inc. 26 jan. 768) bearbeitet von Abd el-Malik *ibn Hisham* († 218 H., inc. 27 jan. 833); hrsg. von *F. Wüstenfeld*. 2 vol. Göttingen 1858—60. (Versio germ.: Das Leben Muhammeds u. s. w. bearbeitet von *G. Weil*. Stuttgart 1864.)

Muhammed in Medina. Das ist Wakidî's (*al-Wākidi* † 207 H., inc. 27 mai 822) Kitab al Maghazi in verkürzter deutscher Wiedergabe herausgegeben von *J. Wellhausen*. Berlin 1882.

Asad al-gābe. Vitae 7500 virorum qui cum Mohammede convenerunt auctore *Ibn al-A'îr* († 630 H., inc. 18 oct. 1232). 5 vol. Cairo 1286.

- al-Isābe, A biographical dictionary of persons who knew Muhammed by *Ibn Hajar* (Ibn Hajar † 852 H., inc 7 mart. 1448). Edited in arabic by Mowlawies Mohammed Wajyh, 'Abd al-Haqq, and Gholām Qādir and A. Sprenger. Bibliotheca indica. Vol. I, Calcutta 1856; vol. IV, Calcutta 1873. Vol. II, fasc. 1—5; vol. III, fasc. 1—4, Kīṣaṣ el-'anbiyā, (historiae fabulosae prophetarum) auctore *al-Tālabī* († 427 H., inc. 5 nov. 1035). Cairo 1297 et saepius impr.
- Ad-dourra al-fakhira; la perle précieuse de Ghazālī († 505 H., inc. 10 jul. 1111) par *L. Gautier*. Genève 1878. Eschatologia muslimica.

§ ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- Der Koran nach Boysen von Neuem aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit einer historischen Einleitung und Anmerkungen von *G. Wahl*. Halle 1828.
- Der Koran. Aus dem Arabischen wortgetreu neu übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *L. Ullmann*. 6. Aufl. 1862.
- Le Koran, Traduction nouvelle, faite sur le texte arabe, par Mr. *Kazimirski*, Nouv. éd. Paris 1854.
- The Koran commonly called the Alcoran of Mohammed: translated into English from the Original Arabic. With explanatory notes taken from the most approved commentators. To which is prefixed a preliminary discourse. By *George Sale*. London 1774 et saepius.
- J. M. Rodwell*, The Koran, translated from the arabic, 2 ed. London 1876.
- The Qur'ān translated by *E. H. Palmer*. 2 parts. Oxford 1880 (The sacred books of the East translated by various oriental scholars and edited by *F. Max Müller* vol. VI. IX).
- †*Geschichte des Qorāns von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Göttingen 1860.
- Über die Religion der vorislamischen Araber. Eine zur Habilitation etc. öffentlich zu vertheidigende Abhandlung von *Ludolf Krehl*. Leipzig 1863.
- *Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammad nach bisher grösstentheils unbenutzten Quellen bearbeitet von *A. Sprenger*. Zweite Ausgabe. Berlin 1869.
- †Das Leben Muhammed's. Nach den Quellen populär dargestellt von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Hannover 1863.
- W. Muir*, The life of Mahomet and History of Islam. 4 vol. London 1858—61.
- †Das Leben und die Lehre des Muhammed. Dargestellt von *Ludolf Krehl*. 1. Theil. Das Leben des Muhammed. Leipzig 1884.

- * *Snouck-Hurgronje*, Het mekkansche Feest. Leiden 1880.
 † Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judenthum aufgenommen? von *Abraham Geiger*. Bonn 1833.
R. Dozy, Het Islamisme. Leiden 1863. 2 ed. Haarlem 1880; Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme par R. Dozy trad. par V. Chauvin. Leyde-Paris 1879.
 Die Mu'taziliten oder die Freidenker im Islām. Ein Beitrag zur allgemeinen Culturgeschichte von *Heinrich Steiner*. Leipzig 1865.
 De strijd over het Dogma in den Islām tot op el-Ash'ari door Dr. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Leiden 1875.
 Zur Geschichte Abu 'l-Hasan al-Aš'arī's († circa 324 H. = 935) von *Wilhelm Spitta*. Leipzig 1876.
J. Goldziher, Die Schule der Zahiriten, ihr Ursprung, ihr System und ihre Geschichte. Leipzig 1884.

F. HISTORICA.

α ab Orientalibus conscripta.

- Ibn Coteiba's* (ibn Kutaiba † 276 H., inc. 6 mai. 889) Handbuch der Geschichte herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1850.
 Anonyme Arabische Chronik Band XI vermuthlich das Buch der Verwandtschaft und Geschichte der Adligen von Abulhasan ahmed ben jahja ben gäbir ben dāwūd elbelāḍori elbagdādi († 279 H., inc. 3 apr. 892). Autogr. und herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1883.
 * *Annales* auctore Abu Djafar Mohammed Ibn Djarir *At-Tabari* (al-Tabari † 309 H., inc. 12 mai. 921), quos ediderunt J. Barth, Th. Nöldeke, O. Loth (†), E. Prym, H. Thorbecke, S. Fränkel, D. H. Müller, M. Th. Houtsma, S. Guyard (†), V. Rosen et M. J. de Goeje I, 1—5; II, 1—3; III, 1—6 Leiden 1879 seq.
Maḡoudi (al-Mas'ūdī † 346 H., inc. 4 apr. 957) Les prairies d'or. Texte et traduction par *C. Barbier de Meynard* et *Pavet de Courtelles*. 9 tomes. Paris 1861—77. (id. 2 vol. Bulak 1283.)
Hamḡae Ispahanensis (scrips. anno 350 H.) annalium libri X. Edidit *J. M. E. Gottwaldt*. I. textus, II. transl. Petropoli-Lipsiae 1844. 1848.
 Historia saracenica, arabice olim exarata a Georgio Elmacino (*al-Makīn* † 672 H., inc. 18 jul. 1273), edita et latine reddita opere et studiis *Thomae Erpenii*. Lugduni Bat. 1625.
 * *Ibn el-Athiri* (*ibn al-Atīr* † 630 H., inc. 18 oct. 1232) Chronicon quod perfectissimum (el-Kāmil) inscribitur. Edidit *Carolus Johannes*

- Tornberg.* 14 vol. Lugduni Bat. 1851—1876. (12 vol. Bulak 1290.)
- Elfachri. Geschichte der islamischen Reiche vom Anfang bis zum Ende des Chalifates, von *Ibn etthiqthaga* (scrips. anno 1302 n. a.) Arabisch herausgegeben von W. Ahlwardt. Gotha 1860.
- Abulfedae* († 732 H., inc. 4 oct. 1331) *Annales musulmici arabice et latine.* Opera et studiis J. J. Reiskii. nunc primum ed. J. G. Ch. Adler. 5 vol. Hafniae 1789—94. — 2 vol. Stambul 1286.
- † *Abulfedae historia Anteislamica, Arabice e duob. Codd. Paris.* edidit. vers. lat. notis et indicibus auxit H. O. Fleischer. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Ibn Haldūn* († 808 H., inc. 29 jun. 1405) *al-ibar etc. Historia universalis.* 7. vol. Bulak 1284. — *Prolégomènes d'Ebn- Khaldoun.* Texte arabe par Quatremère. 3 vol. Paris 1858 (Notices et extraits des mscr. XVI, 1. XVII, 1. XVIII, 1.) — *Prolégomènes historiques d'Ibn Khaldoun.* Traduction par Mac Guckin de Slane. 3 vol. Paris 1862—68 (Notices et extr. XIX, 1. XX, 1. XXI, 1).
- The *Tarikh al-Kholfāa*; or history of the Caliphs, from the death of Mohammad to the year 900 of the Hijrah by the celebrated Jalāl al-Din Al-Osyooti (al-Suyūtī † 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505), ed. by W. N. Lees und Mawlawi Abd al-Haqq. Calcutta 1857.
- * *Liber expugnationis regionum auctore Imāmo Ahmed ibn Jahja ibn Djābir al-Baladsori* (al-Balāḍurī † 279 H., inc. 3 apr. 892) ed. M. J. de Goeje. Lugduni Bat. 1866. 4^o
- * *Chronologie orientalischer Völker von Alḡerūnī.* Herausgegeben von Eduard Sachau. Gedruckt auf Kosten der D. M. Ges. Leipzig 1878. 4^o. — *Chronology of ancient Nations. An English Version of the Arabic Text of the Athar ul Bākiya of Albīrūnī, or "Vestiges of the Past."* Collected and reduced to writing by the Author in A. H. 390—1, A. D. 1000. Translated and Edited, with Notes and Index. by C. E. Sachau. Published for the Oriental Translation Fund of Great Britain and Ireland. Roy. 8^o. London 1879.
- Book of religious and philosophical sects by Muhammad *al-Shahrastāni* († 528 H., inc 29 mart. 1153). Now first edited by W. Cureton. 2 vol. London 1846. — Abu-'l-Faḥī Muh'ammad asch-Schahrastāni's Religionspartheien und Philosophenschulen. Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von Th. Haarbrücker. 2 Bände. Halle 1850—1.
- Die Chroniken der Stadt Mekka. Gesammelt und herausgegeben von Ferdinand Wüstenfeld. (I Azrakī. II Fākihi, Fāsi, Ibn Dhuheira. III. Kuṭb ed-dīn. IV. Deutsche Bearbeitung). I—IV. Leipzig 1857—61.

- Ahmedis Arabsiadæ (*Ahmed ibn 'Arabšah* † 854 H., inc. 14 febr. 1450) vitae et rerum gestarum Timuri, qui vulgo Tamerlanes dicitur historia. (Ed.) Latine vertit etc. *S. H. Manger*. 2 vol. Leovardiae 1767. 1772.
- Analectes sur l'histoire et la littérature des Arabes d'Espagne par *Al-Makkari* (al-Makḥari † 1041 H., inc. 30 jul. 1631). Publiés par *R. Dozy*, *G. Dugat*, *L. Krehl*, et *W. Wright*. 2 vol. Leyde 1855—61. (Conf. *Fleischer*, Textverbesserungen in Al-Makkari's Geschichtswerke: Berichte der kön. sächs. Ges. der Wissenschaften; philol.-histor. Classe (XIX) 1867 p. 151—220; (XX) 1868 p. 236—309; (XXI) 1869 p. 39—118; 147—210. — Lettre à M. Fleischer contenant les remarques critiques et explicatives sur le texte d'Al-Makkari par *R. Dozy*. Leyde 1871). — Conf. The history of the mohammedan dynasties in Spain by Ahmed ibn Mohammed Al-Makkari. Translated and illustrated by Pascual de Gayangos. 2 vol. London 1840—3. 4^o.
- Historia Abbadidarum praemissis scriptorum Arabum de ea dynastia locis nuñc primum editis, auctore *R. P. A. Dozy*. I—III. Lugduni Bat. 1849.
- al-Ḥiṭaṭ (geographia et historia Aegypti) auctore *al-Makrīzi* († 845 H., inc. 22 mai. 1441). 2 vol. Bulak 1270. — Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks de l'Egypte, écrite en arabe par Taki-eddin-Ahmed Makrizi, traduite en français et accompagnée de notes par *Quatremère*. 2 vol. Paris 1837—45. 4^o.
- Abūl-Maḥāsīn* ibn Tagrī Bardī († 874 H., inc. 11 jul. 1469) Annales (historia Egypti) I, 1. 2 ediderunt *T. G. J. Juynboll* et *B. F. Matthes*. II, 1. 2. ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll*. Lugduni Bat. 1852—61.
- Husn al-muḥādara. Historia Egypti auctore *al-Suyūṭī* († 911 H., inc. 4 jun. 1505). 2 vol. Cairo.

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- *Die Geschichtschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke. Von *F. Wüstenfeld*. (Aus dem XXVIII und XXIX Bande der Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. W. zu Göttingen.) Göttingen 1882. 4^o.
- †Vergleichungstabellen der muhammedanischen und christlichen Zeitrechnung nach den ersten Tagen jedes muhammedanischen Monats berechnet. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Leipzig 1854.
- Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien . . . Aus den Quellen zusammengestellt von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1852. q.-fol. — Register zu den genealogischen Ta-

bellens der Arabischen Stämme und Familien. Mit historischen und geographischen Bemerkungen von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1853.

* *Caussin de Perceval*, Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'islamisme. 3 vol. Paris 1847.

* Geschichte der Chalifen. Nach handschriftlichen grösstentheils noch unbenützten Quellen bearbeitet von *Gustav Weil*. 3 Bände. Mannheim 1846—51. — Geschichte des Abbasidenchalifats in Egypten. Von *Gustav Weil*. 2 Bände. Stuttgart 1860—2.

† Geschichte der islamitischen Völker von Mohammed bis zur Zeit des Sultan Selim übersichtlich dargestellt von *Gustav Weil*. Stuttgart 1866.

† Geschichte der Araber bis auf den Sturz des Chalifats von Bagdad. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1864.

W. Muir, Annals of the early Caliphate from original sources. London 1883.

Geschichte der Mauren in Spanien bis zur Eroberung Andalusiens durch die Almoraviden (711—1110). Von *R. Dozy*. Deutsche Ausgabe mit Originalbeiträgen des Verfassers. 2 Bände. Leipzig 1874.

Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien. Von *Adolf Friedrich von Schack*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1865. 2. Aufl. 1877.

Culturgeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. 2 Bände. Wien 1875—77.

* Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams. Der Gottesbegriff, die Prophetie und Staatsidee. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. Leipzig 1868.

G. GEOGRAPHICA.

a ab Orientalibus conscripta.

Das geographische Wörterbuch des Abu 'Obeid 'Abdallah ben 'Abd el- 'Aziz el-*Bekri* († 487 H. = 1094) nach den Handschriften zu Leiden, Cambridge, London und Mailand herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen, Paris 1876. 1877.

* *Jacut's* (Yakūt † 626 H. = 1229) geographisches Wörterbuch aus den Handschriften zu Berlin, St. Petersburg und Paris auf Kosten der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. 6 Bände. Leipzig 1866—73.

- Jacut's* Moschtarik, das ist: Lexicon geographischer Homonyme. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld.* Göttingen 1846.
- Marāsid al-iṭṭilā'i, Lexicon geographicum ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll* I—VI. Lugduni B. 1850—64. (Excerptum ex Jākūt.)
- Al-Hamdānī's († 334 H., inc. 13 aug. 945) Géographie der Arabischen Halbinsel. Nach den Handschr. herausgegeben von *David Heinrich Müller.* Leiden 1884.
- Géographie d'Aboulféda (*Abū-l-fidā* † 732 H., inc. 4 oct. 1331). Texte arabe par *Reinaud* et *Mac Guckin de Slane.* Paris 1840. — Géographie d'Ismā'il Abou 'l-Fédā en arabe publiée par *Charles Schier.* Éd. autogr. Dresde 1846. — Géographie d'Aboulféda, traduite de l'arabe en français par *Reinaud* I. II, 1 Paris 1848; II, 2 par *Stanislas Guyard.* Paris 1883.
- *Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum. Edidit *M. J. de Goeje.* Pars prima. Viae regnorum. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore Abu Ishāk al-Fārisī *al-Istakhri* (al-Iṣṭahrī, cf. Zeitschrift d. D. Morgenl. Ges. Bd. 25, p. 42 ff.) — Pars secunda. Viae et regna. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore Abu 'l-Kāsim *Ibn Haukal* (ibid.). — Pars tertia. Descriptio imperii Moslemici auctore *Al-Mokaddasi* (al-Muḳaddasi scrips. anno 378 H.). — Pars quarta. Continens indices, glossarium et addenda et emendanda ad part. I—III auctore *M. J. de Goeje.* Lugduni Bat. 1870—1879.
- The travels of *Ibn Jubair* (fine saec. VI H.) edited by *William Wright.* Leyden 1852.
- Voyages d'Ibn Batoutah (*ibn Baṭūṭa* † 779 H., inc. 10 mai. 1377). Texte arabe, accompagnée d'une traduction par *C. Defrémery* et *B. R. Sanguinetti* (Publications de la Société asiatique). 4 vol. Paris 1853—58; deux. tir. 1874—77.

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- (Karte von) Arabien zu C. Ritters Erdkunde, Buch III, West-Asien, Theil XII und XIII bearbeitet von *H. Kiepert.* Neue berichtigte Ausgabe, die Orthographie revidirt von *Th. Nöldeke.* Berlin 1867 (D. Reimer).
- Die alte Geographie Arabiens als Grundlage der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Semitismus von *A. Sprenger.* Bern 1875.
- Arabien im sechsten Jahrhundert. Eine ethnographische Skizze von *Otto Blau.* Mit einer Karte: Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenl. Gesellschaft. Leipzig 1869 (XXIII B.) p. 559—592.
- Arabien und die Araber seit hundert Jahren. Eine geographische und geschichtliche Skizze von *Albrecht Zehme.* Halle 1875.

- Beschreibung von Arabien. Aus eigenen Beobachtungen und im Lande selbst gesammelten Nachrichten abgefasst von *Carsten Niebuhr*. Kopenhagen 1772. 4^o.
- †* *Travels in Arabia* (1814) comprehending an account of those territories in Hedjaz which the Mohammedans regard as sacred. By the late *John Lewis Burckhardt*. London, 2 vol. 1829. — *Johann Ludwig Burckhardt's Reisen in Arabien*, enthaltend eine Beschreibung derjenigen Gebiete in Hedjaz, welche die Mohammedaner für heilig achten . . . Aus dem Englischen übersetzt. Weimar 1830.
- Richard Burton*, Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to El Medinah and Meccah. 2 vol. London 1857 (et saepius; etiam in Tauchnitz edition).
- Adolph von Wrede's Reise in Hadhramaut, Beled Beny 'Issā und Beled el Hadschar*. Herausgegeben . . . von *H. Freiherr von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1870. — *Reise nach Südarabien und Geographische Forschungen im und über den südwestlichen Theil Arabiens von Heinrich Freiherrn von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1873.

H. POETICA.

- Über Poesie und Poetik der Araber von *Wilhelm Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1856. 4^o.
- Bemerkungen über die Ächtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte mit besonderer Beziehung auf die sechs Dichter etc. von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1872.
- * *The Diwans of the six ancient arabic poets Ennābīga, 'Antara. Tharafa, Zuhair, 'Alqama and Imru'ulqais*, ed. by *W. Ahlwardt*. London 1870.
- Le *Dīwān de Nābīga Dhobyānī* publié par *H. Derenbourg*. *Journal asiatique* 1868—9.
- Le *diwan d'Amro'lkais* par le B^{on} de *Slane*. Paris 1837. 4^o. (conf. *Amrīlkais*, der Dichter und König. Von *Fr. Rückert*. Stuttgart und Tübingen 1843).
- H. Thorbecke*, 'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter. Leipzig 1867.
- †* *Septem Mo'allakāt carmina antiquissima Arabum, textum etc. rec. F. A. Arnold*. Lipsiae 1850.
- * *Hamasaē carmina cum Tebrisii scholiis integris edidit, indicibus instruxit, versione latina et commentario illustr. G. G. Freytag*. 2 vol. Bonnae 1828—47 (coll. Abu Tammām † 190, inc. 27 nov.

- 865; al-Tabrīzī comm. † 420, inc. 11 aug. 1108). Alia ed. Bulak 1296. Conf. Hamāsa oder die ältesten arabischen Volkslieder, gesammelt von Abu Temmām, übersetzt und erläutert von *Friedrich Rückert*. 2 T. Stuttgart 1846.
- Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber. Von *Th. Nöldeke*. Hannover 1864.
- The Hudsailian poems contained in the manuscript of Leyden edited in arabic and translated with annotations by *J. G. L. Kosegarten*. Vol. I. London 1854. 4^o. — Letzter Theil der Lieder der Hudhailiten, arabisch und deutsch: Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. 1. Heft. Berlin 1884.
- Divan de *Férazdak* († 110 H., inc. 16 april 728.) récits de Mohammed-ben-Habib d'après Ibn-el-Arabi publié sur le manuscrit de Sainte-Sophie de Constantinople avec une traduction française par *R. Boucher*. Paris 1870. 4^o (incompl.).
- Chalef elahmar's* Qasside. Berichtigter arabischer Text etc. von *A. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1859.
- Diwan des Abu Nowas nach der Wiener und Berliner Handschrift mit Benutzung anderer Handschriften herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. 1. Die Weinlieder. Greifswald 1861. — Diwan Abi Nuwas. Cairo 1277. († ca. 195 H. = 810).
- Mutanabbii (**al-Mutanabbī* † 354 H. = 965) carmina cum commentario Wahidii primum edidit, indicibus instruxit, varias lectiones adnotavit *Fr. Dieterici*. Berolini 1861. 4^o.
- **Kitāb al-āgānī* auctore Abū 'l-Farag' 'Alī al-Isfahānī († 352 H., inc. 30 jan. 962). 20 vol. Bulak 1285. — Alii Ispahanensis liber cantilenarum magnus, ed. *Kosegarten*. T. 1. Griepesvoldiae 1840. 4^o.

I. VARIA.

α ab Arabibus conscripta.

- *(*Biblia*) Kitāb al-muḥaddas (Vetus Testamentum). London. R. Watts 1822. (Novum Testamentum ibid. 1821.) — † Beirut variae editiones. † New York 1867. —
- Borhān-ed-dīn es-Sernūdji (v. in fine XII saec.) Enchiridion studiosi. Arabice edidit latine vertit et lexico explanavit *Carolus Caspari*. Praefatus est *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1838. 4^o.

Definitiones viri meritissimi Sejjid Scherif Ali ben Mohammed Dschor-dschani (*al-Jurjānī* † 816 H., inc. 3 apr. 1413). Accedunt definitiones theosophi Mohji-ed-din Mohammed ben Ali vulgo Ibn Arabi dicti. Ed. et adnot. critica instruxit *Gustavus Flügel*. Lipsiae 1845.

Statio quinta et sexta et appendix libri Mevakif auctore 'Adhad-ed-din *el-Igī* († 756 H., inc. 16 jan. 1355) cum commentario Ġorgānii ex codd. etc. edidit *Th. Sörensen*. Lipsia 1848. (scholastische Metaphysik).

Cosmographie de Chems ed-din Abou Abdallah Mohammed *ed-Dimichgi* (*al-Dimiškī* † 654 H., inc. 30 jan. 1256). Texte arabe publié d'après l'édition commencée per *M. Frähn*, et d'après les manuscrits par *M. A. F. Mehren*. St. Petersburg 1866. 4^o. — Manuel de la cosmographie du moyen âge, traduit de l'arabe „Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r“ de Shems ed-din Abou-'Abdallah Mohammed de Damas et accompagnée d'éclaircissements par *M. A. F. Mehren*. Copenhague 1874.

* *Zakarija Ben Muhammed ben Mahmūd el-Cazwīnī's* (*al-Kazwīnī* † 682 H., inc. 1 apr. 1283) *Kosmographie*. Herausg. von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen 1848—9. — id. nach der *Wüstenfeld'schen* Textausgabe etc. übersetzt von *Hermann Ethé*. Erster Halbband. Leipzig 1868.

Ḥayāt al-ḥaiwān. Opus zoologicum, auctore *al-Damīrī* († 808 H., inc. 29 jun. 1405). 2 vol. Bulak 1284.

* *al-Maidānī* († 518 H., inc. 19 febr. 1124) *Majma' al-amtāl*. Collectio proverbiorum. 2 vol. Bulak 1283. — *Arabum proverbialia*, vocabulibus instruxit, latine vertit, commentario illustravit *G. W. Freytag* I, II, III (a. b.). Bonnae 1838—43.

† *Les colliers d'or, allocutions morales de Zamakhschari* (*al-Zamahšārī* † 538 H., inc. 16 jul. 1143) texte arabe suivi d'une traduction française et d'un commentaire philologique par *C. Barbier de Meynard*. Paris 1876.

Ali's hundert Sprüche arabisch und persisch paraphrasirt von Reschid-eddin Watwat, nebst einem doppelten Anhang arabischer Sprüche herausgegeben, übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen begleitet von *M. H. L. Fleischer*. Leipzig 1837. 4^o.

* *Les séances de Hariri* (*al-Hariri* † 516 H., inc. 12 mar. 1122), avec un commentaire choisi par *Silvestre de Sacy*; 1 éd. Paris 1822; 2 éd. par *Reinaud* et *J. Derenbourg*. 2 tom. Paris 1847—1853.

* *The Kāmil of El-Mubarrad* († 285 H., inc. 28 jan. 898), edited for the German Oriental Society by *W. Wright*. Part 1—11. Leipzig 1864—82.

- Sîret 'Antar ibn Šaddād. 32 vol. Cairo 1286, (altera recensio 10 vol. Beirut 1871). Conf. *Antar*, a bedoueen romance. Translated from arabic by *T. Hamilton*. Part. I, i—iv. London 1820.
- Alf laila wa-laila. Tausend und eine Nacht arabisch. Nach einer Handschrift aus Tunis herausg. von *Maximilian Habicht* I—VIII; fortges. von *H. L. Fleischer* IX—XII vol. Breslau 1825—43. — The *Alif Laila* or book of the thousand nights and one night, published from an egyptian Ms. by *W. H. Macnaghten*. 4 vol. Calcutta 1839—42. — 4 vol. Bulak 1279. Secundum editionem Bulacensem priorem: The thousand and one nights commonly called, in England, The arabian nights' entertainments. Translated by *W. Lane*. 3 vol. London. 1 ed. 1841. Alias editiones ed. *Edw. Stanley Poole*. (ult. 1882.)

β ab Occidentalibus conscripta.

- †*An account of the manners and customs of the modern Egyptians, written in Egypt etc. By *Edward William Lane*. Variæ editiones. London. — *Lane*, Sitten und Gebräuche der heutigen Egypter. Übersetzt von *J. Zenker*. 3 Bd. Leipzig 1852.
- †**J. L. Burkhardt*, Notes on the Bedouins and Wahábys. 2 vol. London 1831. — Bemerkungen über die Beduinen und Wahabi's. Weimar 1831.
- Einleitung in das Studium der Arabischen Sprache bis Mohammed und zum Theil später . . . von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1861.

CHRESTOMATHIA.

A. FOR TRANSLATION INTO ENGLISH.

I.

قِصَّةُ بَلْقِيسَ وَهِيَ مَأْخُودَةٌ.

مِنْ كِتَابِ قِصَصِ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ لِلشَّعَلِيِّ * قَالَتْ¹ الْعُلَمَاءُ
بِأَخْبَارِ الْقُدَمَاءِ أَنَّ² نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنَ دَاوُدَ
عَلَيْهِمَا السَّلَامُ لَمَّا فَرَغَ مِنْ بِنَاءِ بَيْتِ⁴ الْمَقْدِسِ
عَزَمَ عَلَى الْخُرُوجِ إِلَى أَرْضِ الْحَرَمِ فَتَجَهَّزَ لِلْمَسِيرِ⁵
وَاسْتَعَصَبَ مَعَهُ مِنَ النَّاسِ وَالْجِنَّ وَالشَّيَاطِينَ وَالطَّيُورِ⁵
وَالْوُحُوشِ مَا بَلَغَ عَسْكَرَهُ مِائَةَ فَرَسٍ وَأَمَرَ الرِّيحَ الرَّخَاءَ
فَحَمَلَتْهُمْ *

فَلَمَّا وَافَوْا⁶ الْحَرَمَ أَقَامَ بِهِ مَا⁷ شَاءَ اللَّهُ أَنْ
يُقِيمَ⁸ وَقَرَّبَ الْقَرَابِينَ وَقَضَى الْمَنَاسِكَ وَبَشَرَ أَهْلَهُ
بِخُرُوجِ نَبِيِّنَا مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ وَأَخْبَرَهُمْ أَنَّهُ¹⁰

1 § 91 b.

2 § 95.

3 § 6 f 2.

4 § 87.

5 § 34 a.

6 § 6 e.

7 § 101.

8 § 75.

سَيِّدَ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ وَخَاتَمَ النَّبِيِّينَ وَأَنَّ ذَلِكَ مُثَبَّتٌ فِي زُبُورِهِمْ
ثُمَّ أَحَبَّ أَنْ يَسِيرَ إِلَى أَرْضِ الْيَمَنِ¹

فَخَرَجَ مِنْ مَكَّةَ صَبَاحًا² وَسَارَ نَحْوَ الْيَمَنِ يَوْمَ³
نَجْمٍ سُهَيْلٍ فَوَافِيَ صَنْعَاءَ وَقَتَّ الزَّوَالِ وَذَلِكَ مَسِيرَةُ
شَهْرٍ فَرَأَى أَرْضًا بَيْضَاءَ حَسَنَةً تَزْهُو بِخُضْرَتِهَا فَأَحَبَّ⁵
النُّزُولَ بِهَا لِيُصَلِّيَ⁴ وَيَتَغَدَّى فَطَلَبُوا الْمَاءَ⁵ فَلَمْ يَجِدُوهُ*
وَكَانَ الْهُدْهُدُ دَلِيلَهُ عَلَى الْمَاءِ وَكَانَ⁶ يَرَى الْمَاءَ
مِنْ تَحْتِ الْأَرْضِ كَمَا يَرَاهُ الْإِنْسَانُ فِي بَاطِنِ الزُّجَاجَةِ
فَيَعْرِفُ مَوْضِعَ الْمَاءِ وَغَمَقَهُ⁸ ثُمَّ نَجَّى⁷ الشَّيَاطِينَ
فَيَسْتَخْرِجُونَ الْمَاءَ فَلَمَّا نَزَلَ سُلَيْمَانُ قَالَ الْهُدْهُدُ¹⁰
فِي نَفْسِهِ إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ قَدْ اشْتَغَلَ بِالنُّزُولِ فَأَرْتَفَعَ إِلَى
نَحْوِ السَّمَاءِ وَنَظَرَ إِلَى طُولِ الدُّنْيَا وَعَرْضِهَا وَنَظَرَ يَمِينًا
وَشِمَالًا فَرَأَى بُسْتَانًا بِلْقَيْسَ فَمَالَ إِلَى الْخُضْرَةِ فَوَقَعَ
فِيهَا فَإِذَا هُوَ بِهَدْهُدٍ الْيَمَنِ فَهَبَطَ عَلَيْهِ فَكَانَ اسْمُ
هُدْهُدٍ سُلَيْمَانَ يَعْفُورًا وَاسْمُ هَدْهُدٍ الْيَمَنِ عَفِيرًا¹⁵

¹ § 88 a.² § 82 a.³ § 100 b.⁴ § 75.⁵ § 84 b.⁶ § 74 c.⁷ § 41 b.⁸ § 89.

فَقَالَ عُفَيْرٌ لِيَعْفُورَ مِنْ أَيْنَ أَقْبَلْتَ وَإِلَى أَيْنَ تُرِيدُ
 قَالَ أَقْبَلْتُ مِنَ الشَّامِ مَعَ صَاحِبِي سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ
 عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْهُدُودُ وَمَنْ سُلَيْمَانُ بْنُ
 دَاوُدَ قَالَ مَلِكُ الْجِنِّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَالشَّيَاطِينِ وَالْوُحُوشِ
 5 وَالرِّيَاحِ فَمِنْ أَيْنَ¹ أَنْتَ قَالَ أَنَا مِنْ هَذِهِ الْبِلَادِ قَالَ
 وَمَنْ مَلِكُهَا قَالَ أَمْرَأَةٌ قَالَ فَمَا اسْمُهَا قَالَ يُقَالُ لَهَا
 بِلْقِيسُ وَإِنْ كَانَ لِصَاحِبِكَ مُلْكٌ عَظِيمٌ فَلَيْسَ مُلْكُ
 بِلْقِيسَ دُونَهُ فَإِنَّهَا مَلِكَةُ الْيَمَنِ كُلِّهِ² وَتَحْتَ يَدِهَا
 اثْنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفَ قَيْلٍ³ مَعَ كُلِّ قَيْلٍ مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ مُقَاتِلٍ
 10 فَهَلْ أَنْتَ مُنْطَلِقٌ مَعِيَ حَتَّى تَنْظُرَ إِلَى مُلْكِهَا قَالَ
 أَخَافُ أَنْ يَتَفَقَّدَنِي سُلَيْمَانُ فِي وَقْتِ الصَّلَاةِ إِذَا
 أَحْتَاجَ⁴ إِلَى الْمَاءِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْهُدُودُ الْيَمَانِيُّ إِنَّ
 صَاحِبَكَ لَيْسَرُهُ⁵ أَنْ تَأْتِيَهُ بِخَبَرِ هَذِهِ الْمَلِكَةِ فَاَنْطَلِقْ
 مَعَهُ حَتَّى أَتَى بِلْقِيسَ وَنَظَرَ مُلْكَهَا وَمَا رَجَعَ إِلَى
 15 سُلَيْمَانَ إِلَّا وَقْتُ صَلَاةِ الْعَصْرِ قَالَ فَلَمَّا نَزَلَ سُلَيْمَانُ
 وَدَخَلَ عَلَيْهِ وَقْتُ صَلَاةِ الْعَصْرِ طَلَبَ الْهُدُودَ وَذَلِكَ

1 § 94 b. 2 § 85 b. 3 § 67 a. 4 § 101. 5 § 95 a not.

أَنَّهُ نَزَلَ عَلَى غَيْرِ مَاءٍ فَسَأَلَ الْإِنْسَ عَنِ الْمَاءِ فَقَالُوا
 لَا نَعْلَمُ هَهُنَا مَاءٌ فَسَأَلَ الْجِنَّ وَالشَّيَاطِينَ فَقَالُوا لَا
 نَعْلَمُ فَتَفَقَّدَ عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ الْهَدُودَ فَلَمْ يَجِدْهُ فَتَوَعَّدَهُ *
 وَفِي رَوَايَةٍ كَانَ سَبَبُ تَفَقُّدِهِ الْهَدُودَ وَسُؤَالِهِ عَنْهُ
 إِخْلَالُهُ بِالنُّبُوَّةِ وَذَلِكَ أَنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ كَانَ إِذَا نَزَلَ مَنْزِلًا⁵
 يُظِلُّهُ وَجُنْدَهُ الطَّيْرُ مِنَ الشَّمْسِ فَرَأَى مَوْضِعَ الْهَدُودِ
 خَالِيًا فَدَعَا عَرِيفَ الطَّيْرِ وَهُوَ النَّسْرُ فَسَأَلَهُ عَنِ
 الْهَدُودِ فَقَالَ أَصْلَحَ¹ اللَّهُ أَلَمَلِكَ مَا أَدْرِي أَيُّنَ هُوَ
 وَمَا أَرْسَلْتُهُ إِلَى مَوْضِعٍ فَغَضِبَ عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ سُلَيْمَانُ
 وَقَالَ *لَأَعْدَبَنَّكَ عَذَابًا شَدِيدًا² أَوْ لَأَذْبَحَنَّكَ أَوْ لِيَأْتِيَنِي¹⁰
 بِسُلْطَانٍ مُبِينٍ³ أَى حُجَّةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ *

ثُمَّ دَعَا الْعُقَابَ سَيِّدَ الطُّيُورِ فَقَالَ لَهُ عَلَى
 بِالْهَدُودِ السَّاعَةَ⁴ فَرَفَعَ الْعُقَابُ نَفْسَهُ دُونَ السَّيِّئِ
 حَتَّى اتَّصَقَ بِالْهَوَاءِ فَنَظَرَ إِلَى الدُّنْيَا كَأَلْقَصَعَةٍ بَيْنَ
 يَدَيْ أَحَدِكُمْ ثُمَّ انْتَفَتَ يَمِينًا وَشِمَالًا فَإِذَا هُوَ¹⁵
 بِالْهَدُودِ مُقْبِلًا مِنْ نَحْوِ الْيَمِينِ فَانْقَضَ الْعُقَابُ نَحْوَهُ

يُرِيدُهُ فَلَمَّا رَأَى الْهُدُودَ ذَلِكَ عَلِمَ أَنَّ الْعُقَابَ
يَقْصِدُهُ بِسُوءٍ فَنَاشَدَهُ اللَّهُ وَقَالَ لَهُ أَسْأَلُكَ بِحَقِّ
الَّذِي فَرَّكَ وَأَقْدَرَكَ عَلَيَّ إِلَّا رَحِمْتَنِي وَلَا تَتَعَرَّضْ¹ لِي
بِسُوءٍ قَالَ فَوَلَّى الْعُقَابُ عَنْهُ وَقَالَ لَهُ وَيْلَكَ ثَكِلَتَكَ
⁵ أُمُّكَ إِنَّ نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ قَدْ حَلَفَ أَنْ يُعَذِّبَكَ أَوْ
يَذْبَحَكَ ثُمَّ طَارَا مُتَوَجِّهَيْنِ² فَنَحَوَ سُلَيْمَانَ فَلَمَّا أَنْتَهَيَا
إِلَى الْمَعْسَكِ تَلَقَّاهُمَا النَّسْرُ وَالطَّيْرُ كُلُّهُ وَقَالُوا لَهُ أَئِنَّ
غِبْتَ فِي يَوْمِكَ هَذَا فَلَقَدْ تَوَعَّدَكَ نَبِيُّ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ
وَأَخْبَرُوهُ بِمَا قَالَ فَقَالَ الْهُدُودُ وَمَا أَسْتَتْنِي نَبِيُّ اللَّهِ
¹⁰ قَالُوا بَلَى إِنَّهُ قَالَ أَوْ لِيَأْتِيَنِي بِسُلْطَانٍ مُبِينٍ قَالَ
فَجَوْتُ إِذَا*

ثُمَّ طَارَ الْعُقَابُ وَالْهُدُودُ حَتَّى أَتَيَا سُلَيْمَانَ
وَكَانَ قَاعِدًا عَلَى كُرْسِيِّهِ فَقَالَ الْعُقَابُ قَدْ أَتَيْتَكَ بِهِ
يَا نَبِيَّ³ اللَّهُ فَلَمَّا قَرَّبَ الْهُدُودُ مِنْهُ طَاطَأَ رَأْسَهُ
¹⁵ وَأَرْخَى ذَنَبَهُ وَجَنَاحَيْهِ يَجْرُهَا عَلَى الْأَرْضِ تَوَاضَعًا⁴
لِسُلَيْمَانَ فَبَدَّ سُلَيْمَانَ يَدَهُ إِلَى رَأْسِهِ فَجَبَدَهَا وَقَالَ

¹ § 76 b. ² § 82 b. ³ § 61. ⁴ § 82 d.

أَيَّنَ كُنْتَ لِأَعْدِيَّكَ عَدَابًا شَدِيدًا فَقَالَ لَهُ الْهُدُودُ
يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ أَذْكَرُ وَتُؤَفِّكُ بَيْنَ يَدَيِ اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَدَّ
فَلَمَّا سَمِعَ ذَلِكَ سُلَيْمَانُ ارْتَعَدَ وَعَفَا عَنْهُ*

ثُمَّ سَأَلَهُ مَا الَّذِي أَبْطَأَكَ عَنِّي فَقَالَ الْهُدُودُ
*أَحْطَطُ بِمَا لَمْ تُحِطْ بِهِ وَجِئْتُكَ مِنْ سَبَإٍ بِنَبَأٍ يَقِينٍ⁵
إِنِّي وَجَدْتُ أَمْرًا تَمْلِكُهُمْ وَأُوتِيْتُ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَلَهَا
عَرْشٌ عَظِيمٌ وَجَدْتُهَا وَقَوْمَهَا يَسْجُدُونَ لِلشَّمْسِ مِنْ
دُونِ اللَّهِ وَزَيْنَ لَهُمُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَعْمَالَهُمْ فَصَدَّقَهُمْ
السَّبِيلَ فَهُمْ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ¹*

أَخْبَرَ أَبْنُ مَيْمُونَةَ بِإِسْنَادِهِ عَنْ أَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ عَنِ
النَّبِيِّ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أَنَّهُ قَالَ كَانَ أَحَدُ آبَائِي
بَلْقِيسَ حَنِيًا قَالُوا فَلَمَّا مَاتَ أَبُو بَلْقِيسَ وَلَمْ يُخْلَفْ
وَلَدًا غَيْرَهَا طَبَعَتْ فِي الْمَلِكِ وَطَلَبَتْ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا أَنْ
يُبَايِعُوهَا فَاطَاعَهَا قَوْمٌ وَعَصَاهَا آخَرُونَ فَاخْتَارُوا عَلَيْهَا
رَجُلًا فَمَلَّكُوهُ عَلَيْهِمْ وَافْتَرَقُوا فِرْقَتَيْنِ كُلُّ فِرْقَةٍ مِنْهُنَّ¹⁵
أَسْتَوْلَتْ عَلَى طَرَفٍ مِنْ أَرْضِ الْيَمَنِ ثُمَّ إِنَّ هَذَا

الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي مَلَكَوهُ أَسَاءُ السَّيْرَةِ فِي أَهْلِ مَمْلَكَتِهِ
حَتَّى كَانَ يُمْدُ يَدُهُ إِلَى حَرَمِ رَعِيَّتِهِ يَجْجُرُ بِهِنَّ فَأَرَادَ
أَصْحَابُهُ خَلْعَهُ فَلَمْ يَقْدِرُوا عَلَيْهِ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْ بَلْقَيْسُ
ذَلِكَ أَدْرَكَتْهَا الْغَيْرَةُ فَأَرْسَلَتْ إِلَيْهِ وَعَرَضَتْ نَفْسَهَا
عَلَيْهِ ٥ فَاجَابَهَا الْمَلِكُ إِلَى ذَلِكَ وَقَالَ مَا مَنَعْنِي أَنْ
أَبْتَدِئَكَ بِالْخُطْبَةِ إِلَّا الْيَأْسُ^١ مِنْكَ فَقَالَتْ لَا أَرْغُبُ عَنْكَ
فَإِنَّكَ كُفُوٌ كَرِيمٌ فَاجْمَعْ رِجَالَ قَوْمِي فَأَخْطُبْنِي مِنْهُمْ
فَجَمَعَهُمْ وَخَطَبَهَا مِنْهُمْ فَقَالُوا لَا تَرَاهَا تَفْعَلُ هَذَا
فَقَالَ إِنَّمَا هِيَ الَّتِي أَبْتَدَأْتَنِي وَإِنِّي أُحِبُّ أَنْ تَسْمَعُوا
قَوْلَهَا فَتَشْهَدُوا عَلَيْهَا فَلَمَّا جَاؤُهَا^٢ وَذَكَرُوا لَهَا ذَلِكَ
قَالَتْ نَعَمْ إِنِّي أُحِبُّبْتُ الْوَلَدَ فَزَوَّجُوهَا مِنْهُ فَلَمَّا
زَفَّتْ إِلَيْهِ خَرَجَتْ فِي نَاسٍ كَثِيرٍ مِنْ خَدَمِهَا وَحَشَمِهَا
حَتَّى غَصَّتْ مَنَازِلُهُ وَدُورُهُ بِهِمْ فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْهُ سَقَتُهُ
الْحُمْرَ حَتَّى سَكِرَ ثُمَّ حَرَّتْ رَأْسَهُ وَأَنْصَرَفَتْ مِنَ اللَّيْلِ
إِلَى مَنْزِلِهَا فَلَمَّا أَصْبَحَ النَّاسُ وَرَأَوْا الْمَلِكَ قَتِيلًا وَرَأْسَهُ
١٥ مَنصُوبًا عَلَى بَابِ دَارِهِ عَلِمُوا أَنَّ ذَلِكَ الْمُنَاكِحَةَ كَانَتْ

مَكْرًا وَخَدِيعَةً مِنْهَا فَأَجْتَمَعُوا إِلَيْهَا وَقَالُوا لَهَا أَنْتِ
 أَحَقُّ¹ بِهَذَا أَلْمَلِكِ مِنْ غَيْرِكَ فَقَالَتْ لَوْ لَا أَلْعَارُ
 وَالشَّنَارُ مَا قَتَلْتُهُ وَلَكِنْ رَأَيْتُهُ قَدْ عَمَّ فَسَادُهُ
 فَأَخَذْتَنِي الْحَمِيَّةُ فَفَعَلْتُ بِهِ مَا فَعَلْتُ فَمَلَكُوهَا
 وَاسْتَتَبَ أَمْرُهَا فِي الْمَمْلَكَةِ*

5

فَقَالَتْ لِيُوزَرَائِهَا مَا كَانَ يَعْبُدُ آبَائِي الْمَاضُونَ
 قَالُوا كَانُوا يَعْبُدُونَ إِلَهَ السَّمَاءِ قَالَتْ وَأَيْنَ هُوَ قَالُوا
 هُوَ فِي السَّمَاءِ وَعَلِمُهُ فِي الْأَرْضِ قَالَتْ فَكَيْفَ أَعْبُدُهُ
 وَأَنَا² لَا أَرَاهُ وَلَسْتُ أَعْرِفُ شَيْئًا أَشَدَّ مِنْ نُورِ الشَّمْسِ
 فَهِيَ أَوْلَى مَا يَنْبَغِي لَنَا عِبَادَتُهُ فَعَبَدَتِ الشَّمْسَ مِنْ¹⁰
 دُونِ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى³ وَحَمَلَتْ قَوْمَهَا عَلَى عِبَادَتِهَا وَكَانُوا
 يَسْجُدُونَ لَهَا إِذَا طَلَعَتْ وَإِذَا غَرَبَتْ*

فَلَمَّا أَخْبَرَ الْهَذْهَدُ سُلَيْمَانَ بِخَبَرِ بَلْقِيسَ قَالَ
 لَهُ سُلَيْمَانُ *سَنَنْظُرُ أَصَدَقْتَ أَمْ كُنْتَ مِنَ الْكَاذِبِينَ⁴
 ثُمَّ إِنَّ الْهَذْهَدَ دَلَّهُمْ عَلَى الْمَاءِ فَاحْتَفَرُوا الرِّكَائِيَا¹⁵
 وَهِيَ الْأَبَارُ الَّتِي لَمْ تَطَوْ بِبَطْنِ كُلِّ وَادٍ فَرَوَى النَّاسُ

وَالدَّوَابَّ وَكَانُوا قَدْ عَظَشُوا ثُمَّ كَتَبَ سُلَيْمَانُ كِتَابًا
 مِنْ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ إِلَى بَلْقَيْسَ مَلِكَةِ
 سَبَأَ * بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ² السَّلَامُ عَلَى مَنْ
 اتَّبَعَ الْهُدَى أَمَّا بَعْدُ * فَلَا تَغْلُوا عَلَيَّ وَأَتُونِي
 5 مُسْلِمِينَ² وَطَبَعَهُ بِالْمِسْكِ وَخَتَمَهُ بِخَاتَمِهِ وَقَالَ لِلْهُدُودِ
 * أَذْهَبَ بِكِتَابِي هَذَا فَأَلْقِيهِ إِلَيْهِمْ ثُمَّ تَوَلَّ عَنْهُمْ وَكُنْ
 قَرِيبًا مِنْهُمْ فَأَنْظُرْ مَاذَا يَرْجِعُونَ³ * فَأَخَذَ الْهُدُودُ
 الْكِتَابَ وَآتَى بِهِ إِلَى بَلْقَيْسَ وَكَانَتْ بِأَرْضٍ يُقَالُ لَهَا
 مَأْرُبُ مِنْ صَنْعَاءَ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ فَوَافَاهَا فِي قَصْرِهَا
 10 وَقَدْ غُلِقَتِ الْأَبْوَابُ وَكَانَتْ إِذَا رَقَدَتْ غَلَقَتِ الْأَبْوَابَ
 وَأَخَذَتِ الْمَفَاتِيحَ فَوَضَعَتْهَا تَحْتَ رَأْسِهَا فَأَتَاهَا
 الْهُدُودُ وَهِيَ نَائِمَةٌ مُسْتَلْقِيَةٌ عَلَى ظَهْرِهَا فَأَلْقَى
 الْكِتَابَ عَلَى فُحْرِهَا وَقَالَ وَهَبُ⁴ بَنُ مُنَبِّهٍ كَانَتْ لَهَا
 كُوَّةٌ مُسْتَقْبِلَةٌ لِلشَّمْسِ تَقَعُ الشَّمْسُ فِيهَا حِينَ تَطْلُعُ
 15 فَإِذَا نَظَرَتْ إِلَيْهَا سَجَدَتْ لَهَا فَجَاءَ الْهُدُودُ إِلَى
 تِلْكَ الْكُوَّةِ فَسَدَّهَا بِجَنَاحَيْهِ فَأَرْتَفَعَتِ الشَّمْسُ وَلَمْ

¹ § 6 f 3. ² Sur. 27, 30—31. ³ Sur. 27, 28. ⁴ § 60.

تَعَلَّمَ¹ فَاسْتَبْطَأَ الشَّمْسَ فَقَامَتْ تَنْظُرُهَا² فَرَمَى
الصَّحِيفَةَ فِي وَجْهِهَا قَالُوا فَأَخَذَتْ بِلُقَيْسُ الْكِتَابَ
وَكَانَتْ قَارِئَةً كَاتِبَةً³ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْ الْخَاتَمَ أَرْتَعَدَتْ وَخَضَعَتْ
لِأَنَّ مُلْكَ سُلَيْمَانَ كَانَ فِي خَاتَمِهِ وَعَرَفَتْ أَنَّ الَّذِي
أَرْسَلَ هَذَا الْكِتَابَ هُوَ أَعْظَمُ مُلْكًا⁴ مِنْهَا وَقَالَتْ إِنَّ⁵
مَلِكًا تَكُونُ رُسُلُهُ الطَّيْرَ لَمَلِكٍ عَظِيمٍ فَقَرَأَتْ الْكِتَابَ
وَتَأَخَّرَ الْهَدُودُ غَيْرَ بَعِيدٍ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا جَاءَتْ حَتَّى
قَعَدَتْ عَلَى سَرِيرِ مُلْكِهَا وَجَمَعَتِ الْمَلَائِكَةَ مِنْ قَوْمِهَا
وَكَانَتْ تُكَلِّمُهُمْ مِنْ وَرَاءِ الْحِجَابِ وَإِذَا أَحْزَنَهَا أَمْرٌ
أَسْفَرَتْ عَنْ وَجْهِهَا فَلَمَّا جَاءُوا وَأَخَذُوا مَجَالِسَهُمْ¹⁰
قَالَتْ لَهُمْ بِلُقَيْسُ إِنِّي أُلْقِي إِلَى كِتَابٍ كَرِيمٍ ثُمَّ قَالَتْ
*يَا أَيُّهَا الْمَلَائِكَةُ افْتُونِي فِي أَمْرِي وَأَشِيرُوا عَلَيَّ فِيمَا
عَرَضَ لِي مَا كُنْتُ قَاطِعَةً أَمْرًا حَتَّى تَشْهَدُونَ فَقَالُوا
مُجِيبِينَ لَهَا نَحْنُ أَوْلُو قُوَّةٍ وَأَوْلُو بَأْسٍ شَدِيدٍ عِنْدَ
الْحَرْبِ وَالْأَمْرِ إِلَيْكَ فَانْظُرِي مَاذَا تَأْمُرِينَ فَجِدِينَا¹⁵
لِلأَمْرِكَ طَائِعِينَ*⁵

قَالَتْ * إِنِّي مُرْسِلَةٌ إِلَيْهِمْ بِهَدِيَّةٍ فَنَاظِرَةٌ بِمَ يَرْجِعُ
 الْمُرْسَلُونَ¹ بِقَبُولِهَا أَوْ رَدِّهَا فَإِنْ يَكُ² مَلِكًا قَبِلَهَا
 وَأَنْصَرَفَ عَنَّا وَإِنْ يَكُ نَبِيًّا رَدَّهَا وَلَمْ يَرْضَ مِنَّا إِلَّا
 أَنْ تَتَّبَعَهُ عَلَى دِينِهِ قَالَوْا ثُمَّ عَمَدَتْ بِلُقَيْسٍ إِلَى خَمْسِ
 مِائَةِ جَارِيَةٍ وَخَمْسِ مِائَةِ غُلَامٍ فَأَلْبَسَتْ الْجَوَارِيَ لِبَاسَ
 الْغُلَمَانِ الْأَقْبِيَّةَ وَالْمَنَاطِقَ وَأَلْبَسَتْ الْغُلَمَانَ لِبَاسَ
 الْجَوَارِي وَجَعَلَتْ فِي سَوَاعِدِهِمْ أَسَاوِرَ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَفِي
 أَعْنَاقِهِمْ أَطْرَاقًا مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَفِي آذَانِهِمْ أَقْرَاطًا وَشُنُوفًا
 مُرَصَّعَاتٍ بِأَنْوَاعِ الْجَوَاهِرِ وَحَمَلَتْ الْجَوَارِيَ عَلَى خَمْسِ
 مِائَةِ فَرَسٍ وَالْغُلَمَانَ عَلَى خَمْسِ مِائَةِ بَرَدَوْنٍ عَلَى كُلِّ
 فَرَسٍ سَرَجٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ مُرَصَّعٌ بِالْجَوَاهِرِ غَوَاشِيهَا مِنْ
 الدِّيبَاجِ الْمَلَوْنِ وَبَعَثَتْ إِلَيْهِ أَيْضًا خَمْسَ مِائَةِ لَبَنَةٍ
 مِنْ ذَهَبٍ وَخَمْسَ مِائَةِ لَبَنَةٍ مِنْ فِصَّةٍ وَتَاجًا مُكَلَّلًا
 بِالذُّرِّ وَالْيَاقُوتِ الْمُرْتَفِعِ وَأَرْسَلَتْ إِلَيْهِ أَيْضًا بِالْمِسْكِ
 وَالْعَنْبَرِ وَالْعُودِ وَالْأَلَنْجُوجِ وَعَمَدَتْ إِلَى حُقَّةٍ فَجَعَلَتْ
 فِيهَا دُرَّةً ثَمِينَةً غَيْرَ مَثْقُوبَةٍ وَخَرَزَةً مَثْقُوبَةً مُعْجَزةً

¹ Sur. 27, 35. ² § 39 a not.; 103 c.

أَلْتَقَبَ وَدَعَتْ رَجُلًا مِنْ أَشْرَافِ قَوْمِهَا يُقَالُ لَهُ
 الْمُنْذَرُ¹ بَنُ عَمْرٍو وَصَمَّتْ إِلَيْهِ رَجَالًا مِنْ قَوْمِهَا
 أَصْحَابَ رَأْيٍ وَعَقْلٍ وَكَتَبَتْ مَعَهُمْ كِتَابًا يَنْصَحُهُ الْهَدَايَا
 وَقَالَتْ فِيهِ إِنْ كُنْتَ نَبِيًّا فَمَيِّزْ² بَيْنَ الرُّصَافِ
 وَالرُّصَفَاءِ وَأَخْبِرْنَا بِمَا فِي الْحَقَّةِ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَفْتَحَهَا³
 وَأَثْقُبِ الدُّرَّةَ ثَقْبًا مُسْتَوِيًّا وَأَسْلُكْ فِي الْحَرَزَةِ خَيْطًا
 مِنْ غَيْرِ عِلَاجٍ إِنْسٍ وَلَا جِنٍّ ثُمَّ أَمَرَتْ بِلُقَيْسٍ
 الْعُلَيْمَانَ فَقَالَتْ لَهُمْ إِذَا كَلَّمَكُمُ سُلَيْمَانُ فَكَلِّمُوهُ
 بِكَلَامٍ فِيهِ تَأْنِيَتْ وَتَخْنِيَتْ يُشْبِهُ كَلَامَ النِّسَاءِ وَأَمَرَتْ
 الْجَوَارِيَ أَنْ يُكَلِّمْنَهُ بِكَلَامٍ فِيهِ غِلْظَةٌ يُشْبِهُ كَلَامَ¹⁰
 الرِّجَالِ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا قَالَتْ لِلرَّسُولِ أَنْظِرْ إِلَى الرَّجُلِ إِذَا
 دَخَلَتْ عَلَيْهِ فَإِنْ نَظَرَ إِلَيْكَ نَظَرَ غَضِبٍ فَأَعْلَمْ أَنَّهُ
 مَلِكٌ فَلَا يَهْوِلُكَ مَنَظَرُهُ فَإِنَّا أَعَزُّ مِنْهُ وَإِنْ رَأَيْتَهُ رَجُلًا
 بَشَاشًا لَطِيفًا فَأَعْلَمْ أَنَّهُ نَبِيٌّ مُرْسَلٌ فَتَفَهَّمْ كَلَامَهُ
 وَرَدَّ الْجَوَابَ فَأَنْطَلَقَ الرَّسُولُ بِالْهَدَايَا*
 فَلَمَّا رَأَى الْهَدَاهُ ذَلِكَ أَقْبَلَ مُسْرِعًا إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ¹⁵

وَأَخْبَرَهُ بِالْخَبَرِ كُلِّهِ فَأَمَرَ سُلَيْمَانُ آلِجَنٍّ أَنْ يَصْنَعُوا
 لَهُ لَبِنًا مِنْ آلذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ فَفَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ أَمَرَهُمْ
 أَنْ يَبْسُطُوا لَهُ مِنْ مَوْضِعِهِ الَّذِي هُوَ فِيهِ إِلَى تِسْعَةِ
 فَرَاسِخٍ مِيدَانًا وَاحِدًا بِلَبِنَاتِ آلذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ وَأَنْ
 5 يَجْعَلُوا حَوْلَ آلْمِيدَانِ حِيطَانًا مُشْرِفَةً مِنْ آلذَّهَبِ
 وَالْفِضَّةِ فَفَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ فَقَالَ لَهُمْ أَيُّ آلَدَوَابِّ أَحْسَنُ
 مِمَّا رَأَيْتُمْ فِي آلْبَرِّ وَآلْبَحْرِ فَقَالُوا يَا نَبِيَّ آللَّهِ إِنَّا
 رَأَيْنَا فِي بَحْرِ كَذَا دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً¹ لَهَا أَجْنَحَةٌ
 وَآعْرَافٌ وَنَوَاصٍ² فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ عَلَى بِهَا آلسَّاعَةَ فَأَتَوْهُ
 10 بِهَا فَقَالَ شُدُّوْهَا عَنْ يَمِينِ آلْمِيدَانِ وَعَنْ يَسَارِهِ
 عَلَى لَبِنَاتِ آلذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ وَآلْقُوا لَهَا غُلُوفَةً فِيهَا
 ثُمَّ أَمَرَ بِآوِلَادِ آلِجَنِّ وَهُمْ خَلْقٌ كَثِيرٌ فَأَقَامُوا عَنْ
 آلْيَمِينِ وَعَنْ آلْيَسَارِ ثُمَّ قَعَدَ سُلَيْمَانُ فِي مَجْلِسِهِ عَلَى
 سَرِيرِهِ وَوَضَعَ³ أَرْبَعَةَ آلآلِفِ كُرْسِيِّ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ وَمِثْلَهَا
 15 عَنْ يَسَارِهِ وَأَمَرَ آلشَّيَاطِينَ أَنْ يَصْطَفُوا صُفُوفًا فَرَاسِخَ
 وَأَمَرَ آلْإِنْسَ فَاصْطَفَوْا فَرَاسِخَ وَأَمَرَ آلْوَحُوشَ وَآلسَّبَاعَ

وَالْهَوَامَّ وَالطُّيُورَ فَاصْطَفُوا فَرَّاسِحَ عَنْ يَمِينِهِ وَعَنْ
يَسَارِهِ فَلَمَّا أَتَبَدَّ الْقَوْمُ وَدَنَوْا مِنَ الْمِيدَانِ وَنَظَرُوا
إِلَى مَلِكِ سُلَيْمَانَ وَرَأَوْا الدَّوَابَّ الَّتِي لَمْ تَرَ أَعْيُنُهُمْ
مِثْلَهَا تَرَوْتُ عَلَى لَبِنِ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِصَّةِ تَقَاصَرَتْ
إِلَيْهِمْ أَنْفُسُهُمْ وَرَمَوْا بِمَا مَعَهُمْ مِنَ الْهَدَايَا فَلَمَّا⁵
رَأَوْا إِلَى الشَّيَاطِينِ نَظَرُوا إِلَى مَنْظَرٍ عَجِيبٍ فَفَزَعُوا مِنْهُمْ
فَقِيلَ لَهُمْ جُوزُوا فَلَا خَوْفَ¹ عَلَيْكُمْ فَكَانُوا يَمُرُّونَ عَلَى
كُرْدُوسٍ مِنَ الْجَنِّ وَالْإِنْسِ وَالطَّيْرِ وَالسَّبَاعِ وَالْوُحُوشِ
حَتَّى وَقَفُوا بَيْنَ يَدَيِ سُلَيْمَانَ فَنَظَرَ إِلَيْهِمْ نَظْرًا حَسَنًا
بَوَجْهِ طَلْقٍ فَقَالَ مَا وَرَاءَكُمْ فَأَخْبَرَهُ رَئِيسُ الْقَوْمِ بِمَا¹⁰
جَاءُوا بِهِ وَأَعْطَاهُ كِتَابَ الْمَلِكَةِ فَلَمَّا نَظَرَ إِلَيْهِ وَقَرَأَهُ
قَالَ لَهُمْ أَأَيْنَ الْحَقَّةُ فَأُتِيَ بِهَا فَحَرَّكَهَا فَجَاءَ جَبْرِيلُ
عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ فَأَخْبَرَهُ بِمَا فِي الْحَقَّةِ فَقَالَ إِنَّ فِيهَا دُرَّةً
تَمِينَةً بِلَا ثَقْبٍ وَخَرَزَةً مَثْقُوبَةً مُعَوَّجَةً الثَّقْبُ فَقَالَ
لَهُ الرَّسُولُ صَدَقْتَ فَاتَّقُبِ الدَّرَّةَ وَأَدْخِلِ الْحَيْطَ فِي¹⁵
الْخَرَزَةِ فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ مَنْ لِي بِتَقْيِهَا فَسَأَلَ الْإِنْسَ

وَالْجِنَّ فَلَمْ يَكُنْ عِنْدَهُمْ عِلْمٌ ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ سَأَلَ الشَّيَاطِينَ
 فَقَالُوا لَهُ أَرْسِلْ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ فَأَرْسَلَ إِلَيْهَا فَلَمَّا أَتَتْ
 أَخَذَتْ شَعْرَةً فِي فِيهَا¹ وَدَخَلَتْ فِي الدَّرَّةِ ثُمَّ خَرَجَتْ
 مِنَ الْجَانِبِ الْآخِرِ فَقَالَ لَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ سَلِي² حَاجَتِكَ
 5 قَالَتْ أَنْ تُصَيِّرَ رِزْقِي فِي الشَّجَرِ قَالَ لَكَ ذَلِكَ ثُمَّ قَالَ
 مَنْ لِهَذِهِ الْخَرَزَةِ يَسْلُكُهَا بِالْخَيْطِ فَقَالَتْ دُودَةٌ بَيْضَاءُ
 أَنَا لَهَا يَا نَبِيَّ اللَّهِ فَأَخَذَتْ الدُّودَةُ خَيْطًا فِي فِيهَا
 وَدَخَلَتْ الثَّقَبَ فَخَرَجَتْ مِنَ الْجَانِبِ الْآخِرِ فَقَالَ لَهَا
 سُلَيْمَانُ مَا حَاجَتُكَ فَقَالَتْ أَنْ تُصَيِّرَ رِزْقِي فِي الْفَوَاكِه
 10 قَالَ لَهَا لَكَ ذَلِكَ *

ثُمَّ إِنَّهُ مَيَّزَ بَيْنَ الْجَوَارِي وَالْغُلَّامِ بَأَنَ أَمَرَهُمْ
 أَنْ يَغْسِلُوا وُجُوهَهُمْ وَأَيْدِيَهُمْ³ فَكَانَتْ الْجَارِيَةُ تَأْخُذُ
 الْمَاءَ مِنَ الْآلَيْنَةِ بِإِحْدَى يَدَيْهَا ثُمَّ تَجْعَلُهُ فِي الْيَدِ
 الْآخَرَى ثُمَّ تَضْرِبُ بِهِ الْوَجْهَ وَالْغُلَامُ يَأْخُذُهُ مِنَ
 15 الْإِنَاءِ بِيَدَيْهِ وَيَضْرِبُ بِهِ وَجْهَهُ وَكَانَتْ الْجَارِيَةُ تَصُبُّ
 عَلَى بَاطِنِ سَاعِدِهَا وَالْغُلَامُ عَلَى ظَهْرِ السَّاعِدِ

وَكَانَتْ الْجَارِيَةُ تَصُبُّ أَلْمَاءَ صَبًّا وَكَانَ الْغُلَامُ يَحْدُرُ
 أَلْمَاءَ عَلَى سَاعِدِهِ حَدْرًا فَمَيَّرَ بَيْنَهُمْ بِذَلِكَ ثُمَّ رَدَّ
 سُلَيْمَانَ الْهَدِيَّةَ كُلَّهَا * وَقَالَ أَتَيْدُونَنِي بِمَالٍ فَمَا
 آتَانِي اللَّهُ خَيْرٌ مِمَّا آتَاكُمْ بَلْ أَنْتُمْ بِهَدِيَّتِكُمْ تَفْرَحُونَ¹
 لِأَنَّكُمْ أَهْلُ الْبُفَاخَرَةِ وَالْمُكَاثَرَةِ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَلَا تَعْرِفُونَ⁵
 غَيْرَ ذَلِكَ وَلَيْسَتْ الدُّنْيَا مِنْ حَاجَتِي لِأَنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى
 قَدْ مَكَّنَنِي مِنْهَا وَأَعْطَانِي مَا لَمْ يُعْطِ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْعَالَمِينَ
 فِيهَا وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ أَكْرَمَنِي بِالنُّبُوَّةِ وَالْحِكْمَةِ ثُمَّ قَالَ
 لِلْمُنْذِرِ بْنِ عَمْرِو أَمِيرِ الْقَوْمِ * أَرْجِعْ إِلَيْهِمْ فَلَنَأْتِيَنَّهُمْ
 بِجُنُودٍ لَا قِبَلَ لَهُمْ بِهَا وَلَنُخْرِجَنَّهُمْ مِنْهَا² أَيَّ مِنْ¹⁰
 سَبِيًّا * أَذِلَّةً وَهُمْ صَاغِرُونَ² إِنْ لَمْ يَأْتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ *
 قَالُوا فَلَمَّا رَجَعَتْ رُسُلُ بَلْقَيْسَ إِلَيْهَا مِنْ عِنْدِ
 سُلَيْمَانَ وَأَخْبَرُوهَا قَالَتْ وَاللَّهِ مَا هَذَا بِمِلِكٍ³ وَمَا
 لَنَا بِهِ مِنْ طَاقَةٍ فَبَعَثَتْ إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ إِنِّي قَادِمَةٌ عَلَيْكَ
 بِمُلُوكٍ قَوْمِي حَتَّى أَنْظُرَ مَا أَمْرُكَ وَمَا تَدْعُو إِلَيْهِ مِنْ¹⁵
 دِينِكَ ثُمَّ إِنَّ بَلْقَيْسَ أَمَرَتْ بِعَرْشِهَا فُجِعَدَ فِي سَبْعَةِ

1 Sur. 27, 36.

2 Sur. 27, 37.

3 § 93 d.

أَبْيَاتٍ بَعْضَهَا دَاخِلٌ بَعْضٍ فِي آخِرِ قَصْرِ مِنْ سَبْعَةِ
 قُصُورٍ لَهَا ثُمَّ أَغْلَقَتْ دُونَهُ الْأَبْوَابَ وَوَكَّلَتْ بِهِ حُرَّاسًا
 يَحْفَظُونَهُ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا قَالَتْ لِمَنْ خَلَفْتُ عَلَى سُلْطَانِهَا
 أَحْتَفِظُ بِمَا قَبْلَكَ وَسَرِيرٍ مُلْكِي فَلَا تُخْلِصْ إِلَيْهِ أَحَدًا
 وَلَا يَرَاهُ حَتَّى آتِيكَ ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا أَمَرَتْ مُنَادِيًا يُنَادِي فِي 5
 أَهْلِ مَمْلَكَتِهَا لِيُؤَدِّنَهُمْ بِالرَّحِيلِ ثُمَّ شَخَصَتْ إِلَى
 سُلَيْمَانَ فِي آثْنَى عَشَرَ أَلْفَ قَيْلٍ مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْيَمَنِ
 تَحْتَ يَدِ كُلِّ قَيْلٍ مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ مُقَاتِلٍ *

فَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ رَجُلًا مَهِيْبًا لَا يُبْتَدَأُ بِشَيْءٍ حَتَّى
 10 يَكُونَ هُوَ الَّذِي يَسْأَلُ عَنْهُ فَخَرَجَ يَوْمًا وَجَلَسَ عَلَى
 سَرِيرِ مُلْكِهِ فَرَأَى رَهْجًا قَرِيبًا مِنْهُ فَقَالَ مَا هَذَا قَالُوا
 بَلْقَيْسُ يَا رَسُولَ اللَّهِ قَالَ وَقَدْ نَزَلَتْ مِنَّا بِهَذَا الْبَكَانِ
 قَالُوا نَعَمْ فَاقْبَلْ سُلَيْمَانُ عَلَى جُنُودِهِ * وَقَالَ يَا أَيُّهَا
 15 الْأَمَلَاءُ أَيُّكُمْ يَأْتِينِي بِعَرْشِهَا قَبْلَ أَنْ يَأْتُونِي مُسْلِمِينَ¹
 وَآخْتَلَفَ الْعُلَمَاءُ فِي السَّبَبِ الَّذِي لِأَجْلِهِ أَمَرَ سُلَيْمَانُ
 بِإِحْضَارِ الْعَرْشِ فَقَالَ أَكْثَرُهُمْ لِأَنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ عَلِمَ أَنَّهَا

¹ Sur. 27, 38.

إِذَا أَسْلَمْتَ حَرَّمَ عَلَيْهِ مَالَهَا فَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَأْخُذَ سَرِيرَهَا
 قَبْلَ أَنْ يَحْرُمَ عَلَيْهِ أَخْذُهُ بِإِسْلَامِهَا وَقِيلَ أَرَادَ بِذَلِكَ
 أَنْ يُرِيَهَا بَعْضَ الْعَجَائِبِ الدَّالَّةِ عَلَى عَظِيمِ قُدْرَةِ
 اللَّهِ وَصِدْقِهِ فِي دَعْوَى النُّبُوَّةِ وَيَخْتَبِرَ عَقْلَهَا * قَالَ عَفْرِتٌ
 مِنْ آلِ حَنْ أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَقُومَ مِنْ مَقَامِكَ¹ أَيْ⁵
 مَجْلِسِكَ الَّذِي تَقْضِي فِيهِ * وَإِنِّي عَلَيْهِ¹ أَيْ عَلَى حِمْلِهِ
 * لَقَوَى إِمِينٌ¹ فَقَالَ سُلَيْمَانُ أُرِيدُ أَسْرَعَ مِنْ هَذَا * قَالَ
 الَّذِي عِنْدَهُ عِلْمٌ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ
 يَرْتَدَّ إِلَيْكَ طَرْفُكَ² وَيُرَوِّى أَنَّ آصَفَ قَالَ لِسُلَيْمَانَ مَدَّ
 عَيْنَيْكَ حَتَّى يَنْتَهَى طَرْفُكَ فَمَدَّ سُلَيْمَانُ عَيْنَيْهِ فَنَظَرَ¹⁰
 نَحْوَ الْيَمَنِ فَخَرَّ آصَفٌ سَاجِدًا وَدَعَا بِأَسْمِ اللَّهِ الْأَعْظَمِ
 فَبَعَثَ اللَّهُ الْمَلَائِكَةَ فَحَمَلُوا السَّرِيرَ مِنْ تَحْتِ الْأَرْضِ
 يَخْدُونَهُ حَتَّى أَخْرَجَتْ الْأَرْضُ بِالسَّرِيرِ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ
 سُلَيْمَانَ * فَلَمَّا رَأَاهُ مُسْتَقَرًّا عِنْدَهُ قَالَ هَذَا مِنْ فَضْلِ
 رَبِّي لِيَبْلُوَنِي أَشْكُرُ أَمْ أَكْفُرُ*²
 ثُمَّ * قَالَ فَكُرُوا لَهَا عَرْشَهَا³ أَيْ زِيدُوا فِيهِ وَأَنْقُصُوا

¹ Sur. 27, 39.² Sur. 27, 40.³ Sur. 27, 41.

مِنْهُ وَاجْعَلُوا أَعْلَاهُ أَسْفَلَهُ وَأَسْفَلَهُ أَعْلَاهُ * نَنْظُرُ أَتَهْتَدِي¹
 إِلَى عَرْشِهَا فَتَعْرِفَهُ * أَمْ تَكُونُ مِنَ الَّذِينَ لَا يَهْتَدُونَ¹
 وَأَرَأَنْ أَنْ يَخْتَبِرَ عَقْلُهَا وَإِنَّمَا حَمَلَهُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مَا ذَكَرَ
 بَعْضُ أَهْلِ الْعِلْمِ أَنَّ الشَّيَاطِينَ خَافَتْ أَنْ يَتَزَوَّجَهَا
 5 سُلَيْمَانُ وَيَسْتَوْلِدَهَا فَتَفُشِّي إِلَيْهِ أَسْرَارَ الْجِنِّ فَلَا
 يَنْفَكُوا مِنْ تَسْخِيرِ سُلَيْمَانَ وَذُرِّيَّتِهِ مِنْ بَعْدِهِ فَأَرَادُوا
 أَنْ يُزْهَدُوهُ فِيهَا فَأَسَاؤُا الثَّنَاءَ عَلَيْهَا وَقَالُوا لَهُ إِنَّ فِي
 عَقْلِهَا شَيْئًا وَإِنَّ رِجْلَيْهَا كَحَافِرِ حِمَارٍ وَإِنَّهَا شَعْرَاءُ
 السَّاقَيْنِ لِأَنَّ أُمَّهُا كَانَتْ جَنِّيَّةً فَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ لَمَّا
 10 أَقْبَلَتْ بَلْقِيسُ تُرِيدُهُ أَمَرَ الشَّيَاطِينَ فَبَنَوْا لَهُ صَرْحًا
 مِنْ زُجَاجٍ كَأَنَّهُ الْمَاءُ بَيَاضًا وَأَجْرُوا مِنْ تَحْتِهِ الْمَاءَ
 وَالْقَى فِيهِ أَلْسَمَكَ ثُمَّ وَضَعَ سَرِيرَهُ فِي صَدْرِهِ وَجَلَسَ
 عَلَيْهِ * فَلَمَّا جَاءَتْ بَلْقِيسُ قِيلَ² لَهَا * أَهَكَذَا عَرْشُكَ
 قَالَتْ كَأَنَّهُ هُوَ² فَشَبَّهَتْهُ بِهِ وَكَانَتْ قَدْ تَرَكْتُهُ خَلْفَهَا
 15 فِي بَيْتٍ خَلْفَ سَبْعَةِ أَبْوَابٍ مُغْلَقَةٍ وَالْمَقَاتِيحُ مَعَهَا
 فَلَمْ تُقِرَّ بِذَلِكَ وَلَمْ تُنْكِرْ فَعَلِمَ سُلَيْمَانُ كَمَالَ عَقْلِهَا

¹ Sur. 27, 41.² Sur. 27, 42.

ثُمَّ قِيلَ لِلْبَلْقَيْسِ * أَدْخُلِي الصَّرْحَ فَلَمَّا رَأَتْهُ حَسِبَتْهُ
لُجَّةً فكَشَفَتْ عَنْ سَاقَيْهَا¹ لِتَخُوضَهُ إِلَى سُلَيْمَانَ فَنَظَرَ
سُلَيْمَانُ فَإِذَا هِيَ أَحْسَنُ النَّاسِ سَاقًا وَقَدَمًا إِلَّا أَنَّهَا
كَانَتْ شَعْرَاءَ السَّافَيْنِ فَلَمَّا رَأَى سُلَيْمَانُ ذَلِكَ صَرَفَ
بَصَرَهُ عَنْهَا وَقَادَاهَا * أَنَّهُ صَرْحٌ مُرَدٌّ مِنْ قَوَارِيرَ¹ وَلَيْسَ⁵
بِمَاءٍ *

فَلَمَّا جَلَسَتْ قَالَتْ لَهُ يَا سُلَيْمَانُ إِنِّي أُرِيدُ أَنْ
أَسْأَلَكَ عَنْ شَيْءٍ قَالَ سَلِي قَالَتْ أَسْأَلُكَ عَنْ مَاءٍ
رَوِّي لَيْسَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ وَلَا مِنَ السَّمَاءِ وَكَانَ سُلَيْمَانُ
إِذَا جَاءَ شَيْءٌ لَا يَعْلَمُهُ سَأَلَ عَنْهُ الْإِنْسَ فَإِنْ كَانَ¹⁰
عِنْدَهُمْ عِلْمٌ ذَلِكَ² وَإِلَّا سَأَلَ الْجِنَّ فَإِنْ عَلِمُوا
وَإِلَّا سَأَلَ الشَّيَاطِينَ فَسَأَلَ الشَّيَاطِينَ عَنْ ذَلِكَ
فَقَالُوا مَا أَهْمُونَ³ ذَلِكَ أَتْتُمِرَ الْخَيْلَ أَنْ تَجْرِيَ ثُمَّ آمَلَّا
الْأَنْبِيَاءَ مِنْ عَرَفَتِهَا فَقَالَ لَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ عَرِّقِي الْخَيْلَ
فَقَالَتْ صَدَقْتَ ثُمَّ إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ دَعَاهَا إِلَى الْإِسْلَامِ¹⁵

¹ Sur. 27, 44.² § 103 c not.³ § 44.

فَاجَابَتْ * وَقَالَتْ رَبِّ اِنِّى ظَلَمْتُ نَفْسِى ¹ بِالْكَفْرِ * وَاَسْلَمْتُ
 مَعَ سُلَيْمَانَ لِلّٰهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ *

وَاخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ ² فِي اَمْرِهَا بَعْدَ الْاِسْلَامِ وَذَهَبَ
 اَكْثَرُهُمْ اِلَى اَنْ اَسْتَنْكَحَهَا سُلَيْمَانُ فَلَمَّا تَزَوَّجَهَا
⁵ اَحَبَّهَا حُبًّا شَدِيدًا وَاَقْرَبَهَا عَلَى مُلْكِهَا وَاَمَرَ الْجِنَّ
 فَبَنَوْا لَهَا بَارِضَ الْيَمَنِ ثَلَاثَةَ حُصُونٍ لَمْ يَرَ النَّاسُ
 مِثْلَهَا اَرْتِفَاعًا وَحُسْنًا ثُمَّ اِنْ سُلَيْمَانُ كَانَ يَزُورُهَا
 فِي كُلِّ شَهْرٍ مَرَّةً بَعْدَ اَنْ رَدَّهَا اِلَى مُلْكِهَا وَيُقِيمُ عِنْدَهَا
 ثَلَاثَةَ اَيَّامٍ وَرَوَى غَيْرُهُمْ اَنْ سُلَيْمَانَ لَمَّا اَسْلَمَتْ
¹⁰ بِلَقِيْسُ قَالَ لَهَا اَخْتَارِى رَجُلًا مِنْ قَوْمِكَ حَتَّى
 اُزَوِّجَكَ اِيَّاهُ قَالَتْ وَمِثْلِي يَنْكِحُ الرِّجَالُ يَا نَبِىَّ اللّٰهِ
 وَقَدْ كَانَ لِي فِي مُلْكِي وَقَوْمِي مِنَ السُّلْطَانِ مَا كَانَ
 قَالَ نَعَمْ اِنَّهُ لَا يَكُونُ فِي الْاِسْلَامِ اِلَّا ذَاكَ وَلَا يَنْبَغِي
 لَكَ اَنْ تُخَرِّمِي مَا اَحَلَّ اللّٰهُ لَكَ قَالَتْ زَوِّجْنِي اِنْ كَانَ
¹⁵ وَلَا بُدَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ ذَا بَتَعَ مَلِكٌ هَمْدَانَ فَزَوَّجَهُ اِيَّاهَا
 ثُمَّ رَدَّهَا اِلَى الْيَمَنِ وَسَلَّطَ زَوْجَهَا ذَا بَتَعَ عَلَى الْيَمَنِ

وَدَعَا سُلَيْمَانُ الزَّوْبَعَةَ أَمِيرَ جِنِّ الْيَمَنِ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَعْمَلْ
 لِي ذِي بَتَعَ مَا اسْتَعْمَلَكَ فِيهِ فَصَنَعَ لِي ذِي بَتَعَ الْمَصَافِعَ
 بِالْيَمَنِ ثُمَّ لَمْ يَزَلْ بِهَا مَلِكًا يَعْمَلُ فِيهَا مَا أَرَادَ
 حَتَّى مَاتَ سُلَيْمَانُ فَلَمَّا حَالَ الْحَوْلُ وَبَلَغَ الْجِنُّ مَوْتَ
 سُلَيْمَانَ أَقْبَلَ رَجُلٌ مِنْهُمْ فَسَلَكَ تِهَامَةَ حَتَّى إِذَا كَانَ 5
 فِي جَوْفِ الْيَمَنِ صَرَخَ بِأَعْلَى صَوْتِهِ يَا مَعْشَرَ الْجِنِّ
 إِنَّ سُلَيْمَانَ ذِي اللَّهِ قَدْ مَاتَ فَأَرْفَعُوا أَيْدِيَكُمْ
 فَعَمَدَتِ الشَّيَاطِينُ إِلَى حَجَرَيْنِ عَظِيمَيْنِ فَكَتَبُوا فِيهِمَا
 كِتَابًا بِالْمُسْنَدِ يَعْنِي خَطَّ الْحَمِيرَةِ نَحْنُ بَنَيْنَا سُلَحِينَ
 وَبَيْنُونَ وَبَنَيْنَا صِرَاحَ وَهْنِيْدَةَ وَهَذِهِ الْخُصُونُ كَانَتْ 10
 بِالْيَمَنِ عَمِلَتْهَا الشَّيَاطِينُ لِي ذِي بَتَعَ وَلَوْلَا صَارِخُ
 بَيْتِهَامَةَ لَمْ يَرْفَعُوا أَيْدِيَهُمْ فَأَذْطَلَفُوا وَتَفَرَّقُوا وَأَنْقَضَى
 مُلْكُ ذِي بَتَعَ وَمُلْكُ بَلْقَيْسَ مَعَ مُلْكِ سُلَيْمَانَ
 عَم. وَاللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ*

حَدِيثُ وَفَاةٍ بَلْقَيْسَ* فَأَقَامَتْ بَلْقَيْسُ سَبْعَ سِنِينَ 15
 وَسَبْعَةَ أَشْهُرٍ ثُمَّ تُوفِّيَتْ فَدُفِنَتْ تَحْتَ حَائِطٍ بِمَدْيَنَةَ
 تَدْمُرَ مِنْ أَرْضِ الشَّامِ وَلَمْ يَعْلَمْ أَحَدٌ بِمَوْضِعِ قَبْرِهَا

إِلَى أَيَّامٍ وَلِيدٍ بَيْنَ عَبْدِ الْمَلِكِ بَيْنَ مَرْوَانَ قَالَ أَبُو
 مُوسَى بْنُ نَصْرِ بُعِثْتُ فِي خِلَافَتِهِ إِلَى مَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ
 وَمَعِيَ الْعَبَّاسُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ فَجَاءَ مَطَرٌ عَظِيمٌ فَأَنْهَارَ
 بَعْضُ حَائِطٍ بِمَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ فَأَذْكَشَفَتِ الْأَرْضُ عَنْ
 5 تَابُوتِ طُولِهِ سِتُّونَ ذِرَاعًا مُتَّخِذٌ مِنْ حَجَرٍ أَصْفَرٍ كَأَنَّ
 الرَّعْفَرَانَ مَكْتُوبٌ عَلَيْهِ هَذَا مَدْفَنُ تَابُوتِ بِلْقَيْسَ
 الصَّالِحَةِ زَوْجَةِ سُلَيْمَانَ بْنِ دَاوُدَ أَسْلَمَتْ لِسَنَةِ عِشْرِينَ
 خَلَتْ مِنْ مُلْكِهِ وَتَزَوَّجَ بِهَا يَوْمَ عَاشُورَاءَ وَتُوفِّيَتْ
 يَوْمَ الْاِثْنَيْنِ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَبِيعِ سَنَةِ سَبْعٍ وَعِشْرِينَ خَلَتْ
 10 مِنْ مُلْكِهِ وَدُفِنَتْ لَيْلًا تَحْتَ حَائِطٍ بِمَدِينَةِ تَدْمُرَ لَمْ
 يَطَّلِعْ عَلَى دَفْنِهَا إِنْسٌ وَلَا جَانٌّ إِلَّا مَنْ دَفَنَهَا قَالَ
 فَرَفَعْنَا غِطَاءَ التَّابُوتِ وَإِذَا هِيَ غَضَّةٌ كَأَنَّهَا دُفِنَتْ فِي
 لَيْلَتِهَا فَكَتَبْنَا بِذَلِكَ إِلَى الْوَلِيدِ فَأَمَرَ بِتَرْكِهِ وَأَنْ
 يُبْنَى عَلَيْهِ بِالْعَخْرِ وَالْمَرَمَرِ*

نُبْدَةُ مِنْ آخِبَارِ الْخُلَفَاءِ مَأْخُودَةٌ

مِنْ مَرْجِ الذَّهَبِ لِلْمَسْعُودِيِّ

كَانَ اسْمُ أَبِي بَكْرٍ عَبْدَ اللَّهِ بْنِ عُثْمَانَ وَهُوَ أَبُو
فَكَّافَةَ بْنِ عَامِرِ بْنِ عَمْرِو بْنِ كَعْبِ بْنِ سَعْدِ بْنِ
تَيْمِ بْنِ مُرَّةَ بْنِ كَعْبٍ وَفِي مُرَّةَ يَجْتَمِعُ مَعَ نَسَبِ رَسُولِ
اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ وَلَقَبَهُ عَتِيقٌ لِبِشَارَةِ رَسُولِ
اللَّهِ إِيَّاهُ أَنَّهُ عَتِيقٌ مِنَ النَّارِ فَسَمَّى يَوْمَئِذٍ عَتِيقًا 5
وَهُوَ الصَّحِيحُ وَقِيلَ إِنَّهَا سُمِّيَ عَتِيقًا لِعَتَقِ أُمَّهَاتِهِ
وَأَسْتُخْلِفَ وَأَبُوهُ فِي الْحَيَاةِ وَكَانَ أَزْهَدَ النَّاسِ وَأَكْثَرَهُمْ
تَوَاضَعًا فِي أَخْلَاقِهِ وَلِبَاسِهِ وَمَطْعَمِهِ وَكَانَ لِبُسُهُ فِي
خِلَافَتِهِ الشَّمْلَةَ وَالْعَبَاءَةَ وَقَدِمَ إِلَيْهِ زُعْمَاءُ الْعَرَبِ
وَأَشْرَافُهَا وَمُلُوكُ الْيَمَنِ وَعَلَيْهِمُ الْحُلْدُ وَالْحَبَرُ وَبَرُودُ 10

الرَّوْشِي الْمُثَقَّلِ بِالذَّهَبِ وَالتَّيْجَانِ فَلَمَّا شَاهَدُوا مَا
 عَلَيْهِ مِنَ اللِّبَاسِ وَالرُّهْدِ وَالتَّوَاضُّعِ وَالنُّسْكِ وَمَا هُوَ
 عَلَيْهِ مِنَ الرِّقَابِ وَالْهَيْبَةِ ذَهَبُوا مَذْهَبَهُ وَنَزَعُوا مَا
 كَانَ عَلَيْهِمْ وَكَانَ مِنْهُمْ وَفَدَ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْيَمَنِ
 5 ذُو الْكَلَّاعِ مَلِكُ حِمَيْرَ وَمَعَهُ أَلْفُ عَبْدٍ دُونَ مَنْ كَانَ
 مِنْ عَشِيرَتِهِ وَعَلَيْهِ التَّاجُ وَمَا وَصَفْنَا مِنَ الْبُرُودِ
 وَالْحُلْدِ فَلَمَّا شَاهَدَ مِنْ أَبِي بَكْرٍ مَا وَصَفْنَا أَلْقَى مَا
 كَانَ عَلَيْهِ وَتَزَيَّا بِرِيَّةٍ حَتَّى أَتَاهُ رُيُّ يَوْمًا فِي سُوقٍ
 مِنْ أَسْوَاقِ الْمَدِينَةِ عَلَى كَتِفَيْهِ جِلْدُ شَاةٍ فَفَزَعَتْ
 10 عَشِيرَتُهُ لِذَلِكَ وَقَالُوا لَهُ قَدْ فَخَّخْنَا بَيْنَ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ
 وَالْأَنْصَارِ وَالْعَرَبِ قَالَ أَفَأَرَدْتُمْ مِنِّي أَنْ أَكُونَ مَلِكًا
 جَبَّارًا فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ جَبَّارًا فِي الْإِسْلَامِ لَا وَاللَّهِ لَا تَكُونُ
 طَاعَةُ الرَّبِّ إِلَّا بِالتَّوَاضُّعِ لِلَّهِ وَالرُّهْدِ فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا
 وَتَوَاضَعَتِ الْمُلُوكُ وَمَنْ وَرَدَ عَلَيْهِ مِنَ الرُّغُودِ بَعْدَ
 15 التَّكَبُّرِ وَتَذَلَّلُوا بَعْدَ التَّجَبُّرِ*

وَبَلَغَ أَبَا بَكْرٍ عَنْ أَبِي سُفْيَانَ صَخْرٍ بَنِ حَرْبٍ أَمْرٌ
 فَأَحْضَرَهُ وَأَقْبَلَ يَصِيحُ عَلَيْهِ وَأَبُو سُفْيَانَ يَتَمَلَّقُهُ

وَيَتَذَلَّلُ لَهُ وَأَقْبَلَ أَبُو قُحَاظَةَ وَسَمِعَ صِيَاحَ أَبِي بَكْرٍ
فَقَالَ لِقَائِدِهِ عَلَى مَنْ يَصِيحُ أَبْنَى فَقَالَ لَهُ عَلَى أَبِي
سَفِيَانَ فَدَذَا مِنْ أَبِي بَكْرٍ وَقَالَ لَهُ أَعَلَى أَبِي سَفِيَانَ
تَرْفَعُ صَوْتَكَ يَا عَتِيقُ وَقَدْ كَانَ بِالْأَمْسِ سَيِّدَ
قُرَيْشٍ فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ لَقَدْ تَعَدَّيْتَ طُورَكَ وَجُرْتَ مِقْدَارَكَ⁵
فَتَبَسَّمَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَمَنْ حَضَرَهُ مِنَ الْمُهَاجِرِينَ وَالْأَنْصَارِ
وَقَالَ لَهُ يَا أَبَتِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ قَدْ رَفَعَ بِالْإِسْلَامِ قَوْمًا وَأَذَلَّ بِهِ
آخَرِينَ * وَكَانَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ قَدْ سَبَّهَ الْيَهُودَ
فِي شَيْءٍ مِنَ الطَّعَامِ وَأَكَلَ مَعَهُ الْحَارِثُ بْنُ كَلْدَةَ
فَعَبِيَ وَكَانَ السَّمُّ لِسَنَةِ وَمَرَضَ أَبُو بَكْرٍ قَبْلَ وَفَاتِهِ¹⁰
بِخَمْسَةِ عَشَرَ يَوْمًا وَتُوفِيَ مَسَاءَ يَوْمِ الثَّلَاثَاءِ لِثَمَانَ
بَقِيَيْنَ مِنْ جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةِ سَنَةً ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ مِنَ الْهِجْرَةِ
وَهُوَ ابْنُ ثَلَاثٍ وَسِتِّينَ سَنَةً *

ثُمَّ بُويعَ عُمَرُ وَهُوَ عُمَرُ بْنُ الْخَطَّابِ بْنِ نُفَيْلٍ بَنِ
عَبْدِ الْعُزَّى وَأُمُّهُ خَيْثَمَةُ بِنْتُ هِشَامٍ وَكَانَتْ سَوْدَاءَ¹⁵
وَإِذَا سُمِّيَ عُمَرُ الْقَارُوقُ لِأَنَّهُ فَرَّقَ بَيْنَ الْحَقِّ وَالْبَاطِلِ
وَكُنْيَتُهُ أَبُو حَفْصٍ وَهُوَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ سُمِّيَ بِأَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

وَكَانَ مُتَوَاضِعًا خَشِنَ الْمَلَبَسِ شَدِيدًا فِي ذَاتِ اللَّهِ
 وَاتَّبَعَهُ عُمَّالُهُ فِي سَائِرِ أَعْمَالِهِ وَشَبِيبِهِ وَأَخْلَاقِهِ كُلِّ
 يَتَشَبَّهُ بِهِ مِمَّنْ غَابَ أَوْ حَضَرَ وَكَانَ يَلْبَسُ الْجُبَّةَ
 الصُّوفَ الْمُرَقَّعَةَ بِالْأَدِيمِ وَغَيْرِهِ وَيَشْتَمِلُ بِالْعَبَاءَةِ وَيَحْمِلُ
 ٥ الْقِرْبَةَ عَلَى كَتِفِهِ مَعَ هَيْبَةٍ قَدْ زُرِقَهَا وَكَانَ أَكْثَرَ رِكَابِهِ
 الْإِبِلَ وَرَحْلُهُ مَشْدُودٌ بِاللِّيفِ وَكَذَلِكَ عُمَّالُهُ مَعَ مَا
 فَتَحَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنَ الْبِلَادِ وَأَوْسَعَهُمْ مِنَ الْأَمْوَالِ *
 وَكَانَ مِنْ عُمَّالِهِ سَعِيدُ بْنُ عَامِرٍ فَشَكَاهُ أَهْلُ
 حِمَصَ إِلَيْهِ وَسَلَّوْهُ عَزْلَهُ فَقَالَ عَمْرُ اللَّهِ هُمْ لَا تَفَلُّ فِرَاسْتِي
 ١٠ فِيهِ الْيَوْمَ وَقَالَ لَهُمْ مَاذَا تَشْكُونَ مِنْهُ قَالُوا لَا يُخْرِجُ
 إِلَيْنَا حَتَّى يَرْتَفِعَ النَّهَارُ وَلَا يُجِيبُ أَحَدًا بَلِيلٌ وَلَهُ
 يَوْمٌ فِي الشَّهْرِ لَا يُخْرِجُ فِيهِ إِلَيْنَا فَقَالَ عَمْرُ عَلَىٰ بِهِ
 فَلَمَّا جَاءَ جَمَعَ بَيْنَهُمْ وَبَيَّنَّهُ فَقَالَ مَا تَنْقِمُونَ مِنْهُ
 قَالُوا لَا يُخْرِجُ إِلَيْنَا حَتَّى يَرْتَفِعَ النَّهَارُ قَالَ مَا تَقُولُ
 ١٥ يَا سَعِيدُ قَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِنَّهُ لَيْسَ لِأَهْلِي خَادِمٌ
 فَأَعِجَنَ عَجِينِي ثُمَّ أَجْلَسَ حَتَّى يَخْتَمِرَ فَأَخِيزُ خُبْرِي
 ثُمَّ أَتَوَضَّأُ وَأَخْرِجُ إِلَيْهِمْ قَالَ وَمَاذَا تَنْقِمُونَ مِنْهُ

قَالُوا لَا يُجِيبُ بَلِيلٌ قَالَ قَدْ كُنْتُ أَكْرَهُ أَنْ أذْكَرَ هَذَا
 إِنِّي جَعَلْتُ اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ لِرَبِّي وَجَعَلْتُ النَّهَارَ لَهُمْ قَالَ
 وَمَاذَا تَنْقَمُونَ مِنْهُ قَالَ يَوْمٌ فِي الشَّهْرِ لَا يَخْرُجُ إِلَيْنَا
 فِيهِ قَالَ نَعَمْ لَيْسَ لِي خَادِمٌ فَأَغْسِلُ ثَوْبِي ثُمَّ أَجْفِفُهُ
 فَأُمْسِي فَقَالَ عَمْرُ الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي لَمْ يَفْخَرْ فِرَاسْتِي ⁵
 فِيكَ يَا أَهْلَ حَبْصَ اسْتَوْصُوا بِوَالَيْكُمْ خَيْرًا ثُمَّ بَعَثَ
 إِلَيْهِ عَمْرُ بِأَلْفٍ دِينَارٍ وَقَالَ لَهُ اسْتَعِينْ بِهَا فَقَالَتْ لَهُ
 أَمْرَأَتُهُ قَدْ أَغْنَانَا اللَّهُ عَنْ خِدْمَتِكَ فَقَالَ لَهَا أَلَا
 نَدْفَعُهَا إِلَى مَنْ يَأْتِينَا أَحْوَجَ مِمَّا كُنَّا إِلَيْهَا قَالَتْ
 بَلَى فَصَرَّهَا صَرًّا ثُمَّ دَفَعَهَا إِلَى مَنْ يَثِقُ بِهِ فَقَالَ ¹⁰
 أَنْطَلِقْ بِهَذِهِ الصَّرَّةِ إِلَى فُلَانٍ وَبِهَذِهِ إِلَى يَتِيمٍ فُلَانٍ
 وَهَذِهِ إِلَى مُسْكِينٍ فُلَانٍ حَتَّى بَقِيَ مِنْهَا شَيْءٌ يَسِيرٌ
 فَدَفَعَهُ إِلَى أَمْرَأَتِهِ وَقَالَ أَنْفَقِي هَذَا ثُمَّ عَادَ إِلَى خِدْمَتِهِ
 فَقَالَتْ لَهُ أَمْرَأَتُهُ أَلَا تَبَعْتُ بِذَلِكَ الْمَالَ فَتَشْتَرِي لَنَا
 مِنْهُ خَادِمًا فَقَالَ سَيَأْتِيكَ أَحْوَجُ مِمَّا تَكُونِينَ إِلَيْهِ * ¹⁵
 وَمِنْ عُمَّالِهِ عَلَى الْمَدَائِنِ سَلْمَانُ الْفَارِسِيُّ وَكَانَ
 يَلْبَسُ الصُّوفَ وَيَرْكَبُ الْحِمَارَ بِبِرْدَعَةٍ بَغِيرِ أَكْفٍ وَيَأْكُلُ

خُبَرَ الشَّعِيرَ وَكَانَ نَاسِكًا زَاهِدًا فَلَمَّا آخَتَصَرَ بِالْمَدَائِنِ
 قَالَ لَهُ سَعْدُ بْنُ أَبِي وَقَّاصٍ أَوْصِنِي يَا أَبَا عَبْدِ اللَّهِ
 قَالَ أَذْكَرُ اللَّهِ عِنْدَ هَمِّكَ إِذَا هَمَّتَ وَعِنْدَ لِسَانِكَ
 إِذَا حَكَمْتَ وَعِنْدَ يَدِكَ إِذَا أَقْسَمْتَ وَجَعَلَ سَلْمَانُ
 ٥ يَبْكِي فَقِيلَ لَهُ يَا أَبَا عَبْدِ اللَّهِ مَا يُبْكِيكَ قَالَ سَمِعْتُ
 رَسُولَ اللَّهِ يَقُولُ أَنَّ فِي الْآخِرَةِ عَقَبَةً لَا يَقْطَعُهَا إِلَّا
 الْخُفُّونَ وَأَرَى هَذِهِ الْأَسَاوِدَةَ حَوْلِي فَنَظَرُوا فَلَمْ
 يَرَوْا فِي الْبَيْتِ إِلَّا رَكُوعًا وَإِدَاوَةً وَمَطْهَرَةً*

وَكَانَ عَامِلَهُ عَلَى الشَّامِ أَبُو عُبَيْدَةَ بْنُ الْجَرَّاحِ
 10 وَكَانَ يَظْهَرُ لِلنَّاسِ وَعَلَيْهِ الصُّوفُ الْجَانِي فَعُذِلَ عَلَى
 ذَلِكَ وَقِيلَ لَهُ إِنَّكَ بِالشَّامِ وَأَمِيرُ الْجَيْشِ وَحَوْلَنَا
 الْأَعْدَاءُ فغَيَّرَ مِنْ زِيَّتِكَ وَأَصْلَحَ مِنْ شَارَتِكَ فَقَالَ مَا
 كُنْتُ بِالَّذِي أَتَرُكُ مَا كُنْتُ عَلَيْهِ فِي عَصْرِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ
 صَلَّعَ*

15 وَكَانَ عَمْرٌ لَا يَتْرُكُ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْعَجَمِ يَدْخُلُ
 الْمَدِينَةَ فَكَتَبَ إِلَيْهِ الْمُغِيرَةُ بْنُ شُعْبَةَ إِنَّ عِنْدِي
 غُلَامًا تَجَارًا تَقَاشَا حَدَادًا فِيهِ مَنَافِعٌ لِأَهْلِ الْبَلَدِ فَإِنَّ

رَأَيْتَ أَنَّ تَأْذَنَ لِي فِي الْإِرْسَالِ بِهِ فَعَلْتُ فَأَذِنَ لَهُ
 وَقَدْ كَانَ الْمُغِيرَةُ جَعَلَ عَلَيْهِ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ دِرْهَمَيْنِ وَكَانَ
 يُدْعَى أَبَا لَوْلُؤَةَ وَكَانَ هَجُوسِيًّا مِنْ أَهْلِ نَهَاوَنْدَ فَلَبِثَ
 مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ ثُمَّ أَتَى عُمَرَ يَشْكُو إِلَيْهِ ثِقَلَ خَرَاخِهِ فَقَالَ
 لَهُ عُمَرُ وَمَا تُحْسِنُ مِنَ الْأَعْمَالِ قَالَ نَقَّاشُ فُجَارٍ حَدَّادٌ 5
 فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ مَا خَرَاخُكَ بِكَثِيرٍ فِي كُنْهِ مَا تُحْسِنُ مِنَ
 الْأَعْمَالِ فَمَضَى عَنْهُ وَهُوَ يَتَذَمَّرُ ثُمَّ مَرَّ بِعُمَرَ يَوْمًا آخَرَ
 وَهُوَ قَاعِدٌ فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ أَلَمْ أُحَدِّثْ عَنْكَ أَنَّكَ تَقُولُ
 لَوْ شِئْتُ أَنْ أَصْنَعَ رَحَى تَطْحَنُ بِالرَّيْحِ لَفَعَلْتُ فَقَالَ
 أَبُو لَوْلُؤَةَ وَاللَّهِ لَا صَنَعْتُ رَحَى يَتَحَدَّثُ بِهَا النَّاسُ 10
 وَمَضَى أَبُو لَوْلُؤَةَ فَقَالَ عُمَرُ أَمَّا الْعِلْجُ فَقَدْ تَوَعَّدَنِي
 أَنْفًا فَلَمَّا أَرْمَعَ عَلَى الَّذِي أَرْمَعَ عَلَيْهِ أَخَذَ خَنْجَرًا
 فَاشْتَمَلَ عَلَيْهِ ثُمَّ قَعَدَ لِعُمَرَ فِي زَاوِيَةٍ مِنْ زَوَايَا الْمَسْجِدِ
 فِي الْعَلَسِ وَكَانَ عُمَرُ يَخْرُجُ فِي السَّحَرِ فَيُوقِظُ النَّاسَ
 لِلصَّلَاةِ فَمَرَّ بِهِ فَتَنَّا رَإِلِيهِ فطَعَنَهُ ثَلَاثَ طَعَنَاتٍ 15
 إِحْدَاهُنَّ تَحْتَ سُرَّتِهِ وَهِيَ آتِي قَتْلَتَهُ وَطَعَنَ آثْنَى
 عَشَرَ رَجُلًا مِنْ أَهْلِ الْمَسْجِدِ فَمَاتَ مِنْهُمْ سِتَّةٌ وَبَقِيَ سِتَّةٌ

وَنَحَرَ نَفْسَهُ بِخَنْجَرِهِ فَمَاتَ فَدَخَلَ عَلَى عَمْرِو بْنِ عَبْدِ
اللَّهِ وَهُوَ يَتَجَوَّدُ بِنَفْسِهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
أَسْتَخْلِفُ عَلَى أُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ فَإِنَّهُ لَوْ جَاءَكَ رَأْيِي إِيَّاكَ
أَوْ غَنَمِكَ وَتَرَكَ إِيَّاهُ أَوْ غَنَمَهُ لَا رَأْيِي لَهَا لَدُمَّتَهُ
وَقُلْتَ لَهُ كَيْفَ تَرَكْتَ أَمَانَتَكَ ضَائِعَةً فَكَيْفَ يَا أَمِيرَ
5 الْمُؤْمِنِينَ بِأُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ فَاسْتَخْلِفَ عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَالَ إِنَّ
أَسْتَخْلِفُ عَلَيْهِمْ فَقَدْ أَسْتَخْلِفَ عَلَيْهِمْ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَإِنْ
أَتَرَكْتَهُمْ فَقَدْ تَرَكْتَهُمْ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ فَيَبِئْسَ مِنْهُ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ
حِينَ سَمِعَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ * فَكَانَتْ وَلَايَةُ عَمْرِو بْنِ عَشَرَ سِنِينَ
10 وَسِتَّةَ أَشْهُرٍ وَأَرْبَعَ لَيَالٍ وَقُتِلَ فِي صَلَاةِ الصُّبْحِ وَهُوَ
أَبْنُ ثَلَاثٍ وَسِتِّينَ سَنَةً وَدُفِنَ مَعَ النَّبِيِّ وَأَبَى بَكْرٍ
عِنْدَ رِجْلَيْ النَّبِيِّ وَحُجِّجَ فِي خِلَافَتِهِ تِسْعَ حُلُجَجٍ *
ثُمَّ بَوَّعَ عُثْمَانُ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ غُرَّةَ الْحُرَّمِ أَوْ لَيْلَةَ بَقِيَّتِ
مِنْ ذِي الْحِجَّةِ سَنَةَ ثَلَاثٍ وَعِشْرِينَ وَهُوَ عُثْمَانُ بْنُ
15 عَفَّانَ بْنِ أَبِي الْعَاصِ بْنِ أُمَيَّةَ وَيُكْنَى بِأَبَى عَبْدِ
اللَّهِ وَأَبَى عَمْرٍو وَالْأَغْلَبُ مِنْهُمَا أَبُو عَبْدِ اللَّهِ وَأُمُّهُ
أَرْوَى بِنْتُ كُرَيْزٍ وَكَانَ لَهُ مِنْ أَوْلَادِ عَبْدِ اللَّهِ الْأَكْبَرِ

وعبدُ الله الأصغرُ أمَّها رُقَيَّةُ بنتُ رسولِ الله صلعم
 وأَبانُ وخَالِدُ وسَعِيدُ والوَلِيدُ والمُغِيرَةُ وَعَبْدُ أَلَمَلِكِ
 وأُمُّ أَبانٍ وأُمُّ سَعِيدٍ وأُمُّ عمرو وعائِشَةُ وكان عبدُ
 الله الأكبرُ يُلقَّبُ بالمُطَرَفِ الحُسَنةَ وجَماله وكان
 كثيرَ التزويجِ كثيرَ الطَّلَاقِ وكان أَبانُ أبرَصَ أَحول قد⁵
 حمل عنه أَصحابُ الحديثِ عِدَّةٌ مِنَ السَّنَنِ وكان
 سَعِيدُ أَحولَ بخيلاً وقُتِلَ في زَمَنٍ مُعاوِيَةَ وكان الوليدُ
 صاحبُ شَرابٍ وفتوَّةٍ وهجون وقُتِلَ أبوه وهو مَخْلُوقُ
 الوجهِ سَكَرانٌ عليه مَصَبَّغَاتٌ واسِعَةٌ وبلغ عبدُ الله
 الأصغرُ مِنَ السَّنِّ سِتًّا وَسَبْعِينَ سَنَةً فَنَقَرَ دِيكَ عَلَى عَيْنَيْهِ¹⁰
 فَكَانَ ذَلِكَ سَبَبَ مَوْتِهِ وعبدُ الملك مات صغيراً ولا
 عَقِبَ لَهُ *

وكان عثمانُ في نِهايةِ الجُودِ والكَرَمِ والسَّباحَةِ
 والبَذْلِ في القَريبِ والبَعيدِ فسلِكَ عَمَّالُهُ وكَثِيرٌ مِنَ
 أَهْلِ عَصْرِهِ طَريقَتَهُ وتَأَسَّوْا بِفِعْلِهِ وبَنى دارَهُ بالمَدِينَةِ¹⁵
 وشيَّدَهَا بِالْحَجَّجِ وَالْكِلْسِ وجَعَلَ أَبْوابَهَا مِنَ السَّاجِ
 والعَرَعِ وأَقْتَنَى أَمْوالاً وَجِناناً وَعِيوناً بالمَدِينَةِ وَذُكِرَ

أَنَّ عَثْمَانَ يَوْمَ قُتِلَ كَانَ لَهُ عِنْدَ خَازِنِهِ مِنَ الْمَالِ
خَمْسُونَ وَمِائَةً أَلْفَ دِينَارٍ وَأَلْفَ أَلْفِ دِرْهَمٍ وَقِيَمَةُ
ضِيَاعِهِ بِوَادِي الْقُرَى وَحُنَيْنٍ وَغَيْرِهِمَا مِائَةُ أَلْفِ
دِينَارٍ وَخَلْفَ خَيْلٍ وَإِبِلٍ كَثِيرَةً *

5 وَكَانَ عُمَالُهُ عَلَى أَعْمَالِهِ جَمَاعَةً مِنْهُمْ الْوَلِيدُ بْنُ
عُقْبَةَ بْنِ أَبِي مُعَيْطٍ عَلَى الْكُوفَةِ وَهُوَ مِنْ أَخْبَرِ
رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ أَنَّهُ مِنَ أَهْلِ النَّارِ فَصَرَفَ عَنْ
الْكُوفَةِ الْوَلِيدَ بْنَ عُقْبَةَ وَوَلَّاهَا سَعِيدَ بْنَ الْعَاصِ
وَكَانَ السَّبَبُ فِي صَرْفِ الْوَلِيدِ وَوَلَايَةِ سَعِيدٍ عَلَى مَا
10 رَوَى أَنَّ الْوَلِيدَ كَانَ شَرِبَ مَعَ نَدَمَائِهِ وَمُغَنِّيهِ مِنْ
أَوَّلِ اللَّيْلِ إِلَى الصَّبَاحِ فَلَمَّا آذَنَهُ الْمُؤَذِّنُ بِالصَّلَاةِ
خَرَجَ مُتَفَضِّلًا فِي غِلَائِلِهِ فَتَقَدَّمَ إِلَى الْحِجْرَابِ فِي صَلَاةِ
الصُّبْحِ فَصَلَّى بِهِمْ أَرْبَعَ رَكَعَاتٍ وَقَالَ أَتُرِيدُونَ أَنْ
أَزِيدَكُمْ وَقِيلَ أَنَّهُ قَالَ فِي سُجُودِهِ وَقَدْ أَطَالَ أَشْرَبُ
15 وَأَسْقَنِي فَقَالَ لَهُ بَعْضُ مَنْ كَانَ خَلْفَهُ فِي الصَّفِّ
الْأَوَّلِ مَا تُرِيدُ لَا زَادَكَ اللَّهُ مَزِيدَ الْخَيْرِ وَاللَّهُ مَا
أَعْجَبُ إِلَّا مِنْ بَعْثِكَ إِلَيْنَا وَالْيَا وَعَلَيْنَا أَمِيرًا فَحَصَبَ

الناس الوليدَ بِحَصَى المسجد فدخل قصره يترنح
 وشاع بالكوفة فَعَلَهُ وَظَهَرَ فِسْقُهُ وَمدَاوَمَتُهُ شُرْبَ الخمرِ
 فهجم عليه جماعة من المسجد فوجدوه سكران
 مُضْطَجِعًا على سريره لَا يَعْقِلُ فَأَيَّقُظُوهُ من رَقْدَتِهِ فلم
 يَسْتَيْقِظْ ثُمَّ تَقَيَّأَ عَلَيْهِم ما شَرِبَ من الخمرِ فَأَنْتَرَعُوا⁵
 خَاتَمَهُ من يده وخرجوا مِنْ فُورِهِمْ إِلَى المدينة فَأَتَيَا
 أَثْنَانِ مِنْهُم عثمان بن عفان فشهدا عنده على
 الوليد أَنَّهُ شَرِبَ الخمرِ فقال عثمان وما يُدْرِيكُمَا أَنَّهُ
 شَرِبَ الخمرِ فقالا هِيَ الخمرِ آتَيْنِي كُنَّا نَشْرِبُهَا فِي
 الجَاهِلِيَّةِ وَأَخْرَجَا خَاتَمَهُ فَدَفَعَاهُ إِلَيْهِ فزَجَرَهُمَا وَدَفَعَ¹⁰
 فِي صُدُورِهِمَا وَقَالَ تَنَحَّيَا عَنِّي فَخَرَجَا مِنْ عِنْدِهِ وَأَتَيَا
 عَلِيًّا رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ فَاخْبَرَاهُ بِالقِصَّةِ فَأَتَى عثمانَ
 وهو يقول دَفَعْتَ الشُّهُودَ وَأَبْطَلْتَ الحُدُودَ فَقَالَ لَهُ
 عثمانُ فَمَا تَرَى قَالَ أَرَى أَنَّ تَبَعْتَ إِلَى صَاحِبِكَ فَتُحْضَرُهُ
 فَإِنْ أَقَامَا الشَّهَادَةَ عَلَيْهِ فِي وَجْهِهِ وَلَمْ يَدْرَأْ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ¹⁵
 بِحُجَّةٍ أَقَمْتَ عَلَيْهِ الحَدَّ فَلَبَّا حَضَرَ الوليدُ دَعَاها
 عثمانُ فَأَقَامَا الشَّهَادَةَ عَلَيْهِ وَلَمْ يَدُلَّ بِحُجَّةٍ فَأَلْقَى

عثمان السَّوْطُ إِلَى عَلِيٍّ فَقَالَ عَلِيُّ لِابْنِهِ الْحَسَنِ قُمْ يَا بُنَيَّ
 فَاتَّقِمْ عَلَيْهِ مَا أَوْجَبَهُ اللَّهُ فَقَالَ يَكْفِينِيهِ بَعْضُ مَنْ
 تَرَى فَلَمَّا رَأَى آمْنَيْنَا الْجَمَاعَةَ عَنْ إِقَامَةِ الْحَدِّ عَلَيْهِ
 تَوَقُّيًا لِعُصَبِ عُثْمَانَ لِقَرَابَتِهِ مِنْهُ أَخَذَ عَلِيُّ السَّوْطَ
 5 وَدَنَا مِنْهُ فَلَمَّا أَقْبَلَ نَحْوَهُ سَبَّهُ الْوَلِيدُ وَقَالَ يَا صَاحِبَ
 مَكْسٍ فَقَالَ عَقِيدُ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ وَكَانَ مَعَهُ حُضُرُ
 إِنَّكَ لَتَتَكَلَّمُ يَا أَبَنَ أَبِي مُعَيْطٍ كَأَنَّكَ لَا تَدْرِي مَنْ
 أَنْتَ وَأَنْتَ عَلِيجٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ صَفُورِيَّةَ وَهِيَ قَرْيَةٌ بَيْنَ
 عَمَّا وَاللَّجَوْنِ مِنْ أَعْمَالِ الْأُرْدُنِّ مِنْ بِلَادِ طَبَرِيَّةَ كَانَ
 10 ذِكْرُ أَنَّ أَبَاهُ كَانَ يَهُودِيًّا مِنْهَا فَأَقْبَلَ الْوَلِيدُ يَرَوُّهُ
 مِنْ عَلِيٍّ فَأَجْتَذَبَهُ عَلِيُّ فَضْرَبَ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ وَعَلَاهُ
 بِالسَّوْطِ فَقَالَ عُثْمَانُ لَيْسَ لَكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ بِهِ هَذَا قَالَ
 بَلَى وَشَرًّا مِنْ هَذَا إِذَا فَسَقَ وَمَنْعَ حَقِّ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى
 أَنْ يُؤْخَذَ مِنْهُ * وَوَلَّى الْكُوفَةَ بَعْدَهُ سَعِيدُ بْنُ الْعَاصِ
 15 فَلَمَّا دَخَلَ سَعِيدُ الْكُوفَةَ وَالْيَا أَبَى أَنْ يَصْعَدَ
 الْمِنْبَرَ حَتَّى يُغْسَلَ وَأَمَرَ بِغَسْلِهِ وَقَالَ إِنَّ الْوَلِيدَ كَانَ
 نَجَسًا رَجَسًا *

وكان بلغ الوليدَ عن رجلٍ من اليهود من
 ساكنى قريةٍ من قرى الكوفة أنه يعمل أنواعاً من
 السحر والخيالات فاحضره فأراه في المسجد ضرباً من
 التخاييل وهو أنه أظهر له في الليل قتيلاً عظيماً على
 فرسٍ يركض في صحن المسجد ثم صار اليهودي⁵
 ناقةً تمشي على الحبل ثم أراه صورةً حمارٍ دخل من
 فيه وخرج من دبره ثم ضرب عنق رجلٍ وفرق
 بين جسده ورأسه ثم أمر السيف عليه فقام الرجلُ
 وكان جماعةً من اهل الكوفة حضروا منهم جندبُ
 ابن كعب الأزدى فجعل يستعيد بالله من فعل¹⁰
 الشيطان ومن عملٍ يبعد عن الرحمن وعلم أن ذلك
 هو ضربٌ من التخاييل والسحر فأخترط سيفه وضرب
 اليهودي ضرباً أدارت رأسه عن بدنه وقال *جاء
 الحق وزهق الباطل إن الباطل كان زهوقاً¹ وقد قيل
 أن ذلك كان نهاراً وأن جندبا خرج الى السوق¹⁵
 ودنا من بعض الصياقلة فأخذ منه سيفاً ثم أقبل

¹ Sur. 17, 83.

فِي الزَّحَامِ وَقَدْ سَتَرَ السَّيْفَ فَضْرَبَ بِهِ عُنُقَ الْيَهُودِيِّ
 وَقَالَ إِنْ كُنْتَ صَادِقًا فَأَحْيِ نَفْسَكَ فَأَنْكَرَ عَلَيْهِ
 الْوَلِيدُ ذَلِكَ وَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَضْرِبَ عُنُقَهُ فَقَامَ قَوْمٌ مِنَ
 الْأَزْدِ فَقَالُوا لَا تَقْتُلْ وَاللَّهِ صَاحِبَنَا فَصَيَّرَهُ فِي الْحَبْسِ
 ٥ وَأَرَادَ قَتْلَهُ غِيْلَةً فَكَانَ يَصَلِّي اللَّيْلَ كُلَّهُ فَنَظَرَ
 السَّجَّانُ إِلَى قِيَامِهِ لَيْلَةً إِلَى الصُّبْحِ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَنْجِ
 نَفْسَكَ فَقَالَ لَهُ جُنْدُبٌ تَقْتُلُ بِي فَقَالَ لَيْسَ ذَلِكَ
 بِكَثِيرٍ فِي مَرَضَةِ اللَّهِ وَالِدَفْعِ عَنِّي مِنْ أَوْلِيَاءِ
 اللَّهِ فَلَمَّا أَصْبَحَ الْوَلِيدُ دَعَا بِهِ وَقَدْ اسْتَعَدَّ لِقَتْلِهِ
 ١٠ فَلَمْ يَجِدْهُ فَسَأَلَ السَّجَّانَ فَاخْبِرْهُ بِهِرَبِهِ فَضْرَبَ
 عُنُقَ السَّجَّانِ وَصَلَبَهُ بِالْكُنَاسَةِ*

B. TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ARABIC.

Preliminary remarks.

Words included within brackets [] are to be omitted in translating; those within parentheses () either represent an Arabic word which is to be added, or give the literal translation of an idiomatic phrase. Nominal sentences are distinguished by a bracketed verb (usually a form of "to be") or pronoun between the subject and the predicate. In the other (verbal) sentences, the verb is to be placed before the subject; the object of the verb is to be placed after the subject, if it is a noun, and after the verb, if it is a pronoun governed by the preposition belonging to the verb. A pronoun in the accusative is of course always a suffix (§ 11 b, but cfr. § 46). In general the position of the Arabic words has been retained as far as possible. The English past tenses are usually to be translated by the Arabic perfect, the present and future by the imperfect. All Arabic nouns, not in the status constructus, receive the article, even when in English it may be wanting, except those which are distinguished by having the indefinite article "a, an" before them (cfr. § 84 b). Adjectives must follow their nouns and agree with them in gender, number (but cfr. § 62) and case. Pronouns agreeing with verbs are not to be separately translated. A preposition after a verb is usually entered in the glossary under the heading of the verb; if not found there, it must be looked for separately. Exceptions to the above rules are pointed out in the notes.

I.

Nominal Sentences.¹

1. The glory of the man [are] his sons, and the solicitude of the man [are] his dwelling and his neighbour.—2. The elegance of the man [lies] in his tongue, and the elegance of the woman [lies] in her understanding.—3. The liberal [man is] related to God.—4. The worst of repentance [is] at the day² of resurrection.—5. The love of the world [is] the beginning of every sin.—6. The promise of the king [is] a security.—7. The learned [men are] the heirs of the prophets.—8. Wisdom [is] for the character³ like medicine for the body.³—9. The world [is] the prison of the believer and the paradise of the unbeliever.—10. Contentment [is a part] of⁴ the nature³ of the domestic animals.—11. The malady of covetousness has no (not is for it a) cure; and the disease of ignorance has no (not is for it a) physician.—12. The nutriment of the body³ [are] (the) beverages and (the) viands, and the nutriment of the understanding [is] wisdom and learning.—13. Money has

¹ § 92 seqq.

² § 82 a.

³ plur.

⁴ مِنْ.

(to money [is]) a difficult entrance and an easy exit.—
 14. Verily¹ God [is] forgiving and² compassionate.—
 15. Verily ye³ [are] in a manifest error.—16. The
 nobles of⁴ Pharaoh's folk said⁵, "Verily this [is] surely⁶
 "a learned enchanter".—17. Verily in that⁷ [lies] surely
 an example for the unbelievers.—18. Flight in its
 [proper] time [is] better than endurance in its wrong
 time (in another than its [proper] time).—19. There
 is no (not⁸ [is there]) strength and no (not⁸) power
 except with God, the High, the Mighty.—20. The best
 of gifts [is] understanding, and the worst of misfort-
 unes [is] ignorance.—

II.

Verbal sentences.⁹

a. The strong verb.

21. Jonah came out from the whale's belly.—
 22. Zaid killed Muhammed.—23. They gave (beat)
 Omar a violent beating¹⁰.—24. The direction of prayer
 was shifted¹¹ from Jerusalem to Mecca.—25. God [is]
 cognizant of what ye are doing.—26. Verily⁷ God

¹ § 95 a. ² § 97. ³ suffix. ⁴ مَنِيع. ⁵ perf. sing. § 91 a.

⁶ § 95 a. rem. ⁷ § 95 a. ⁸ § 81 b. ⁹ § 90 seqq. ¹⁰ § 80.

¹¹ fem.

provides for every one his sufficiency.—27. Learning and money [they] cover up¹ every fault, and poverty and ignorance [they] uncover¹ every fault.—28. They took him away and put him in the bottom of the well.—29. The brothers of Joseph returned² to their father.—30.) Why hast thou³ not⁴ washed thy shirt? —31. The most⁵ of mankind are not grateful².—32. They⁶ [are] unbelievers in⁷ the future life.—33. We made heaven [to be] a [well-]preserved roof.—34. Do not do good out of⁸ hypocrisy, and do not leave off [doing] it out of⁸ modesty.—

35. Why do ye render waste the cultivated⁹ countries?—36. Thereupon we sent Moses and his brother Aaron with our signs to Pharaoh and his nobles; then they declared the two of them¹⁰ to be liars.—37. The angels said¹¹, “O Mary! be obedient to thy Lord and “prostrate thyself; verily¹² God giveth thee glad “tidings of a Word from him; and he¹³ [is one] of¹⁴ “those¹⁵ who are placed near [to God], and he shall “talk to mankind in the cradle!”—38. It is not good to hurry (not is good the hurrying), except in the

1 dual. 2 plur. 3 fem. 4 لَمْ § 76 c. 5 sing. 6 pronoun.
 7 ب. 8 § 82 d. 9 § 62. 10 suffix in the dual. 11 § 91 b;
 12 § 95 a. 13 pronoun. 14 مِنْ. 15 part.

marrying of a¹ daughter, and the burying of a¹ dead [man], and the entertaining of a¹ guest.—39.) Glorify² God in the early morning³ and [late] in the evening³.

40. Verily the hypocrite has (to the hyp. [belong]) three characteristics; his tongue contradicts his heart, and his speech his action, and his exterior his interior.—41. The men of his people used to sit with him⁴ on account of his learning. — 42. Verily the holy war [is] incumbent⁵ on you.—43. The vehemence of a (the) man [is what] causes him to perish⁶.—44. The head of al-Husain the son of Ali was brought into the city⁷ of Damascus⁸ and was placed before Yazid.—45. Verily we⁹ have become Muslims, so become Muslims ye¹⁰ [also]!—46. Do not talk to one another with disgraceful talk!—47. Every thing has (to every thing [belongs]) an indication; and the indication of understanding [is] reflection, and the indication of reflection [is] being silent.—48. We started off towards Bagdad to bring an action against one another¹¹ before¹² its¹³ governor.—49. The most excellent [kind] of praise [is], “[there is] no¹⁴ god

¹ § 84 b. ² plur. ³ indetermin. accus. § 82 a. ⁴ كَانَ sing., then subject, then the verb in the plur. ⁵ Part. ⁶ nominal sent. § 92 c α. ⁷ acc. ⁸ § 88 a. ⁹ § 71 c. ¹⁰ pronoun.
¹¹ part. § 82 b. ¹² إِلَى ¹³ § 50. ¹⁴ § 81 b.

except God!" and the most excellent of [good] works [are] the five¹ prayers; and the most excellent [kind] of character [is] (the) being humble. — 50. They fought with one another four days;² then the Byzantines were routed³. — 51. What is disliked in⁴ the king [is] the being devoted to (the) pleasures, and the hearing of (the) songs and the spending of (the) time therewith (with that). — 52. They said, "O our father! verily we⁵ went away, running races⁶, and left Joseph with⁷ our baggage; then the wolf ate "him". — 53. Observe what [is] in the heart of thy brother by means of his eye, for⁸ the eye [is] the title-page of the heart! — 54. In the fourth year from the birth of Muhammed the [two] angels⁹ cut open¹⁰ his belly and extracted¹¹ his heart; then they cut it¹¹ [his heart] open and extracted¹¹ from it a black clot of blood; thereupon they washed¹¹ his heart and his belly with snow. — 55. They conversed¹² about the case of the Apostle. —

56. Verily God hath (to God [are])¹³ servants whom¹⁴ he distinguishes (he distinguishes them) with

¹ masc. determ. after the noun, § 67 a. ² § 82 a. ³ fem. sing.

⁴ ل. ⁵ § 71 c. ⁶ imperf. merely, § 100 b. ⁷ عِنْدَ with gen.

⁸ ق. ⁹ dual. ¹⁰ sing. § 91 a. ¹¹ dual. ¹² § 91 rem. a.

¹³ § 95 a. ¹⁴ without relative particle § 99 b.

his favours.—57. Restrain thyself from meat¹ which² causes thee to acquire an indigestion, and [from] an action which² occasions thee regret³.—58. Thou hast fallen in love⁴ with a girl, a possessor of beauty³ and elegance³.—59. Muhammed said, "Help thy brother, "[whether he be] doing wrong⁵ or wronged⁵!" They asked, "O Apostle of God! how shall we help him, "[if he be] doing wrong⁵?" He said, "By restraining "him from doing wrong!"—60. Do not turn away⁶ a beggar!—61. A servant does not believe, until he love for his brother that which he loves for himself.—

b. The weak verb.

62. A poor [man] begged of me, so I gave him [two] pieces of money⁷.—63. Be mindful of death, for he⁸ takes hold of your forelocks; if⁹ ye fly from him, he overtakes you, and if⁹ ye stay, he seizes you.—64. Music [is] like the spirit and wine [is] like the body; then through their¹⁰ being combined •is born joy.—65. The Apostle used to¹¹ preach to his

¹ indeterminat. ² without relative particle § 99 b. ³ indeterminat.
⁴ § 73 e. ⁵ § 82 b. ⁶ § 35, rem. 1. ⁷ dual. ⁸ pronoun with
 foll. part. ⁹ § 102. ¹⁰ dual-suffix. ¹¹ cfr. p. 90, rem. 4.

companions and to exhort them and to teach them the beauties of character¹.—66. Verily² our friends shall³ entrust to us their secrets.—67. The lust of⁴ the world [it] entails care and sorrow, and abstinence with regard to it [it] restores the heart and the body.—68. Moses said, “I have brought⁵ you an evidence “from your Lord; so let go⁶ along with me the Sons “of Israel!”—69. Depend on the Living [one], who does not die!—70. He pleases me, who makes poetry to⁷ show his education, not to⁷ gain, and applies himself to singing to⁷ enjoy himself, not to⁷ seek for himself [reward]. — 71. Demand help of the good (people⁸ of the good), and of those that act well (and of the acting well).—72. Choose⁹ whichever of the pages thou wilt!—73. Supplicate much (make much the supplicating), for thou¹⁰ dost not know when answer₁ will₁ be given thee!—74. Restrain your tongues and lower your glances and guard your continence! —

75. A (the) kingdom [it]¹¹ is made flourishing through justice and is protected by courage and is ruled through [good] government.—76. [Good] govern-

1 pl. determ.

2 § 95 a.

3 سَ § 74 a.

4 فِي

5 § 73 e.

6 sing. 7 § 82 d.

8 § 88 b.

9 fem.

10 § 71 c.

11 nominal sentence.

ment [is], that¹ the gate of the chief be guarded² in the [proper] time of being guarded³, and opened in the [proper] time of being open³, and the gatekeeper friendly. —77. Jalâl-al-dîn used not to go to sleep⁴ except drunk⁵, nor (and not) to arise in the morning except seedy and tipsy⁶. —78. It is not seemly for the wise [man], that⁷ he address a (the) fool, like as it is not seemly for the sober [man], that he address a (the) drunken [man]. —79. People⁸ of the world [are] like folk in a ship, who⁹ are carried onwards whilst they are sleeping¹⁰. —80. The evil-doer [he] does not consider¹¹ mankind except [as] evil, because he¹² sees them with the eye of his nature. —81. God elected Abraham [as] an intimate friend. —82. Every affair in the world [is] transitory. —83. Wickedness [is] to be feared¹³, and no one (not) fears it except the intelligent [man]; and good [is] to be hoped for¹⁴, and every one¹⁵ seeks it. —84. [To] a servant¹⁶ shall not¹⁷ be given [anything] more ample than 'endurance. —85. I looked into Paradise, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] the poor; and I looked

¹ § 96. ² كَانَ with part. § 81 a. ³ § 34 rem. ⁴ cfr. § p. 90, n. 4.

⁵ § 82 b. ⁶ § 82 b. ⁷ § 96. ⁸ § 88 b. ⁹ § 99 b, c. ¹⁰ § 100 a.

¹¹ § 92 c, α. ¹² suff. ¹³ § 77 b. § 39 b. ¹⁴ § 40 rem. c. ¹⁵ أَكَدَّ.

¹⁶ § 79. rem. b. ¹⁷ لَمْ § 75.

into hell-fire, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] (the) women.—86.) He¹ whose counsel is asked [is] one¹ in whom one confides; and he¹ who asks counsel [is] one¹ who is to be aided.—87.) Do not put off² the work of to-day till to-morrow³.—88.) Thou dost not⁴ see in the creation of God any⁵ imperfection.—89.) Little which¹ continues [is] better than much which¹ is interrupted.—90. Pharaoh said, “We will⁶ kill⁷ their sons and spare their women.”—91. A Bedouin looked at a gold-piece; then he said, “How small⁸ is thy size and how great⁸ thy value!”—92. The envious [man] is not well-pleased with thee⁹, until thou diest!—93. Be [the] tail and be not [the] head! for¹⁰ the tail escapes whilst¹¹ the head perishes.

III.

Various subordinate sentences.

• 94. Muhammed said, “Do not begin¹² with the Jews and the Christians by (the) greeting, but when

¹ part. ² § 76 b. ³ indetermin. ⁴ lo. ⁵ § 93 b. ⁶ lo,
§ 74 a. ⁷ § 18. ⁸ § 44. ⁹ verbal sentence! ¹⁰ § 95 a; nomin.
sent. ¹¹ § 100 a. ¹² plur.

ye meet one of them¹, (then)² force him towards the narrowest place (his narrowest).—95. When comes to thy knowledge concerning thy brother what is evil, then seek for him an excuse; but if thou dost not³ find [one], then say, "Perhaps he has an excuse."—96. If⁴ thou eat little, thou shalt live long.—97. If⁴ ye talk in a good manner (make ye good the talk), ye shall enter Paradise.—98. Alî said,—may⁵ God be well pleased with him⁶.—"O⁷ mankind! do not hope except for your Lord, and do not dread [anything] except your transgressions; and be not he ashamed who⁸ doth not know to⁹ learn, and be not he ashamed who⁸ knoweth to⁹ teach!"—99. The subsistence which thou seekest is like the shadow (the likeness of the subsistence... [is] the likeness of the shadow) which moves on along with thee; thou¹⁰ dost not overtake it in pursuing¹¹ [it], then when thou turnest¹² away from it, it follows thee!¹³—100. A man said to the Apostle of God: "O Muhammed, give me thy cloak!"; then he threw it down to¹⁴ him; then he said: "I do not¹⁵ want it"; then he (Muh.) said, "May¹⁶ God combat thee! thou didst wish to⁹ declare me to be niggardly,

¹ أَكْدَ with gen. ² § 104 c. ³ §§ 102, 76 c. ⁴ § 103 b.

⁵ § 73 d. ⁶ after the subject. ⁷ أَتَيْهَا § 61. ⁸ مَنْ. ⁹ أَنْ
with subj. ¹⁰ pronoun. ¹¹ part. 82 b. ¹² § 101. ¹³ perf.

¹⁴ إِلَى. ¹⁵ مَا with imperf. ¹⁶ § 73 d.

but (and) God has not made¹ me [to be] niggardly!² —101. If anyone² long for Paradise, he is unmindful of lusts³.—102. That a man give in alms in his lifetime a drachma (the alms-giving⁴ of a man—a drachma) [is] better for him than that he give in alms a hundred drachmæ at his death.

103. The Prophet—may God bless him and save him—said, “If anyone⁵ drink wine in this world, [and] thereupon do not⁶ repent, he shall be forbidden it⁷ in the future life.”—104. If anyone light a lamp in a mosque, then verily the angels [they] will beg forgiveness for him as long as⁸ that lamp continues kindled⁹.—105. The reed-pen [is] a tree, whose¹⁰ fruit [are] the ideas, and thought [is] a sea, whose¹⁰ pearls [are] wisdom.—106. Verily the dead [man] and he who¹¹ has no religion (he who no¹² religion to him) [are] equal¹³; and he has no¹² trustworthiness [in him] who¹¹ has no¹² piety.—107. Every woman that¹⁴ has no¹² modesty [is] like a dish that has no¹² salt.—108. If anyone’s¹⁵ tattle is much, his erring is much [also].—109. The anger of the

¹ § 76 c. ² § 102. ³ determ. ⁴ inf. ⁵ § 102. ⁶ لَمْ § 76 c.
⁷ § 79 rem. b. ⁸ § 101. ⁹ partic. pass. § 81 a. ¹⁰ § 99 b.
¹¹ مَنْ. ¹² § 81 b. ¹³ sing. ¹⁴ § 99 b, c. ¹⁵ § 99 c.

noble [man], although his fire flare up¹, [is] like smoke of wood² in which [there is] no³ core.—110. To the ignorant [man] are forgiven⁴ seventy⁵ transgressions, ere to the knowing [man] is forgiven one.

111. Be not⁶ like the needle, which⁷ clothes mankind whilst⁸ it [is] naked, nor (and) like the wick, which⁷ gives light to mankind whilst it is consumed⁹. —112. The believer [he] does not escape from the chastisement of God, until he leave four things, lying, and pride, and niggardliness, and evil thinking (evil of the thinking).—113. It is seemly for the younger [ones] to¹⁰ precede the elders in three places; when¹¹ they travel by night¹², or wade through a stream, or encounter horsemen.—114. Do not drink (the) poison out of reliance¹³ on the antidote which thou hast (that which [is] with¹⁴ thee of¹⁵ the antidote).—115. Paradise is desirous¹⁶ of four [kinds of] folk; the first¹⁷ of them¹⁸ [are] those who have fed¹⁹ a hungry [man], and the second [are] those who have clothed¹⁹ a naked [man], and the third [are] those who fast²⁰ in²¹ the month of Ramadân²², and the

1 § 102. 2 indetermin. § 99 b. 3 § 81 b. 4 § 91 a. 5 § 67 b.
 6 لَا with energ. I. 7 § 99 b, rem. 8 § 100 a. 9 § 100 a, with imperf. 10 § 96. 11 § 101. 12 § 82 a. 13 § 82 d. 14 عِنْدَ.
 15 مِنْ. 16 part. 17 masc. 18 suffix in fem. sing. 19 perf. sing.
 20 imperf. sing. 21 § 82 a. 22 § 88 a.

fourth [are] those who read¹ the Koran. — 116. Socrates was asked, "Why hast thou not² mentioned in thy law-code the punishment of him who kills³ his brother?" He said, "I know not that this [is] a thing which exists." — 117. Every thing [it] begins small⁴, thereupon it becomes great, except misfortune⁵; for it begins great, thereupon it becomes small, and every thing [it] becomes cheap, when⁶ it becomes abundant, excepting education; for⁷ when it becomes abundant, it rises in value.

118. After Moses had returned to the Sons of Israel with the Thora (and along with him [was] the Thora), they refused to⁸ accept it and to do according to what [was] in it.—119. God commanded Moses to⁸ fast thirty⁹ days and to purify himself and to purify his garments, and to come to¹⁰ the mountain, that he might talk to him and give him the book.—120. After Damascus was taken¹¹, much folk of¹² its inhabitants joined Heraclius, whilst¹³ he was in¹⁴ Antioch.—121. A certain one of the wise men said, Nothing (not) repels the onslaught of the conquering

¹ imperf. sing. ² § 76 c. ³ § 102. ⁴ § 82 b. ⁵ accus. § 98.
⁶ § 101. ⁷ with suff. § 71 c. ⁸ أَنْ with subj. ⁹ § 82 a. ¹⁰ إِلَى.
¹¹ fem. § 50. ¹² مِنْ. ¹³ § 100 a. ¹⁴ بِ.

enemy like¹ being submissive and giving way, like as² green plants are safe from the vehement wind through their pliancy, because they³ turn along with it, as (how)⁴ it turns.—122. They disagree⁵ concerning Waraka; and of⁶ them [there are] those who assert¹⁰ that he⁷ died a Christian⁸ and did not⁹ reach the appearance of the Prophet; and of⁶ them [there are] those who are of opinion¹⁰ that he⁷ died a Muslim. — 123. O [ye two] companions¹¹ of the prison! as to the one of you¹¹, he shall serve to his lord wine¹², and as to the other, he shall be crucified, then shall¹³ the birds eat of⁶ his head; the affair is decreed¹⁴ concerning which ye inquire! — 124. The Apostle wrote to chieftains¹² of⁶ the tribes, inviting¹⁵ them to become Muslims¹⁶.—125. A wise [man] was asked, “What [is] the thing, which [it] is not good that it be said, although it be¹⁷ right?” He said, “A man’s eulogizing himself¹⁸”. — 126. Woe to [him] who converses with lying, that he may make the people laugh by it!—127. This (the) world and the future life [are] as the East and the West: when thou

¹ مِثْلٌ as subject. § 94 b. ² كَمَا أَتَى § 95 a. ³ sing. suff.

⁴ § 102. ⁵ § 73 b with قَدْ, § 91 rem. a. ⁶ مِنْ. ⁷ § 95 a.

⁸ § 82 b. ⁹ § 76 c. ¹⁰ § 73 b. ¹¹ dual. ¹² indetermin. ¹³ fem.

¹⁴ § 73 c. ¹⁵ § 74 b. ¹⁶ infin. determ. ¹⁷ كَانَ § 102. ¹⁸ § 87.

approachest one of them¹, thou dost recede from the other.—128. Fear ye God in secret² and do not enter into what is not lawful for you!—129. The devotee without learning [is] like the ass of the mill, who³ goes around and does not get through (cut) the distance.—130. The eye of hate [it] draws forth every fault, and the eye of love [it] does not find the faults.

IV.

Anecdotes.

131. An astrologer was crucified; then he was asked, "Hast thou⁴ seen this in thy star?" Then he said, "I saw a raising up⁵, however I did not⁶ know that it [was to be] upon a piece of wood!"

132. A man knocked at the door of 'Amr the son of 'Ubaid; so he said, "Who [is] this?" He said, "I." He ['Amr] said, "I do not know (I am not I know) among our friends (brothers) [any] one⁷, whose name [is] I."

¹ dual suffix. ² determ. ³ §§ 84 b, 99 b, 56 c. ⁴ with
interr. part. هَلْ. ⁵ § 51 a, rem. b. ⁶ § 76 c. ⁷ أَحَدٌ.

133. (The) thieves came¹ in upon Abû Bekr al-Rabbânî, seeking² something (a thing), and he saw them going around³ in the house. Then he said, "O young men! This which ye are seeking⁴ in the night we have already sought⁴ in the day-time, but have not⁵ found it!" So they laughed and went out.

134. It is related⁶, that⁷ a certain one of the polite scholars eulogized a certain one of the princes; so he commanded [that] to him an [ass's] saddle and saddle-girth [should be given]. So he took them⁸ on⁹ his shoulder and went out from his presence¹⁰. Then a certain one of his companions saw him, then said, "What [is] this?" He said, "I eulogized the prince with the most beautiful of my poems, then he invested me with [something] of¹¹ the most glorious of his dresses".

135. Al-Mugîra, the son of Šu'ba said: No one (not)¹² has deceived me except (another than) a youth of¹¹ the Sons of al-Hârit. For I mentioned a woman of theirs (of¹¹ them), that¹³ I should marry her; then he said, "O¹⁴ Prince! [There is] no good¹⁵

¹ § 91 a. ² § 100 b imperf. alone. ³ imperf. ⁴ with suffix.

⁵ مَا. ⁶ § 73 b. ⁷ أَتَى. ⁸ dual suffix. ⁹ عَلَى. ¹⁰ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ.

¹¹ مِنْ. ¹² § 76 c. ¹³ لِ. ¹⁴ أَجَبَهَا § 61. ¹⁵ § 81 b.

for thee in her." So I said, "And why [not]?" He said, "I saw a man kissing¹ her." So I turned from her; then the young man married her. So I reproached him and said, "Didst thou not² inform me that thou³ hadst seen a man kissing her?" He said, "Yes, I saw her father kissing her."

136. Al-Dahhâk the son of Muzâhim said to a Christian, "[How would it be] if⁴ thou wert to become a Muslim?" He said, "I have not⁵ ceased loving⁶ Islâm, except that⁷ my love for wine⁸ prevents me from it." So he said, "Become a Muslim and drink it!" So after he had become a Muslim, he said to him, "Thou hast⁹ become a Muslim, so if thou drink it¹⁰, we shall chastise thee; and if thou apostatize, we shall kill thee, so choose for thyself". Then he chose Islâm and his Islâm was good. So he had taken¹¹ him by stratagem.

137. A Bedouin stole a purse in which (it) [were] pieces of money¹²; thereupon he entered the mosque to pray¹³; and his name was¹⁴ Moses. Then the leader of prayer recited, "And what is that¹⁵ in¹⁶ thy

¹ imperf. ² أَلَمْ § 76 c. ³ أَتَى with suff. ⁴ لَوْ § 102.

⁵ مَا with perf. ⁶ § 81 a, with indetermin. part. § 87 rem. ⁷ § 95 b. with foll. verbal sentence. ⁸ § 87. ⁹ § 73 e. ¹⁰ § 102. ¹¹ perf.

¹² indetermin. ¹³ § 74 b. ¹⁴ كَانَ. ¹⁵ fem. ¹⁶ بِ.

right hand, Oh Moses¹?" So he said, "By God, verily thou [art] an enchanter!" Thereupon he threw away the purse and went out.

138. A man claimed the (a) gift of prophecy in the days² of al-Rašid. So after he had appeared before him [the Caliph], he asked him, "What [is that] which is said of thee?" He said, "that I³ am a noble prophet." He asked, "But what⁴ indicates the truth of thy claim?" He said, "Demand what⁵ thou wilt"⁶. He said, "I wish that⁷ thou make these⁸ beardless slaves, [who are] standing⁹ [there] this moment¹⁰ [to be furnished] with beards!¹¹" Then he looked down for a while¹², thereupon he raised his head and said, "How is it lawful that I make these¹³ beardless [ones to be furnished] with beards¹¹ and alter these⁸ beautiful¹⁴ forms? but¹⁵ I will make the bearded ones (owners of beards) beardless in one twinkling." So al-Rašid laughed at him and pardoned him and commanded a present [to be given] to him.

¹ Sura 20, 18. ² § 82 a. ³ § 71 c. ⁴ أَيُّ شَيْءٍ. ⁵ § 5 c.
⁶ perf. § 102. ⁷ أَنِّي. ⁸ § 62, 84 a, rem. ⁹ determ. § 86 a.
¹⁰ § 84 a. ¹¹ indetermin. ¹² § 82 a. ¹³ plur. ¹⁴ § 62.
¹⁵ وَإِنَّمَا.

139. A person pretended to prophecy¹; then they besought of him in² the presence of al-Ma'mûn a miracle. So he said, "I will cast for you a pebble into the water, then it will dissolve". He [al-Ma'mûn] said, "We are³ content." So he brought out a pebble [which he had] along with him, then cast it into the water; then it dissolved. So they said, "This⁴ is a trick; however, we will give⁵ thee a pebble of our own⁶, and let it dissolve!⁷" Then he said, "Ye are not⁸ more illustrious⁹ than Pharaoh and I am not (and not I¹⁰) mightier in wisdom¹¹ than Moses, and Pharaoh did not¹² say to Moses, 'I am not¹³ content with what thou doest¹⁴ with thy staff, so that¹⁵ I will give thee a staff of my own¹⁶, which¹⁷ thou shalt make [into] a serpent.'" So al-Ma'mûn laughed and let him pass on.

140. It is said¹⁸ that Abû Dulâma¹⁹ the poet was standing²⁰ before al-Saffâh on²¹ a certain day (a certain one of the days). Then he said to him, "Ask of me what thou dost want (thy want)!" So Abû

1 § 21. 2 ب 3 § 73 c. 4 § 93 c. 5 imperf. 6 مِنْ عِنْدِنَا.
 7 imperf. 8 كَيْسَى § 81 a. 9 § 47 e. 10 pronoun. 11 § 82 c.
 12 § 76 c. 13 § 76 c, 73 c. 14 § 99 c. 15 حَتَّى with subj.
 16 مِنْ عِنْدِي. 17 § 99 b, c. 18 § 73 c. 19 § 95. 20 كَانَ with
 part. § 81 a. 21 فِي.

Dulâma said to him, "I want a hunting-dog." So he said, "Give ye it¹ to him!" Then he said, "And I want a horse, on³ which I may go forth to hunt." He said, "Give ye it to him!" He said, "And a page², who⁴ will lead the dog and hunt with him." He said, "And give ye him a page!" He said, "And a slave-girl², who⁴ will prepare the game and give us to eat of it." He said, "Give ye him a slave-girl!" He said, "These, O Prince of the Believers! have need of ([there is] no⁵ escape for them from) a dwelling, which⁶ they may inhabit." So he said, "Give ye him a dwelling, which⁶ will contain them!" He said, "And if they have not (and if not is⁷ to them) an estate, then wherefrom shall they live?" He said, "I grant⁸ thee ten cultivated⁹ estates and ten waste estates⁹." He said, "And what [are] the waste⁹ [ones] O Prince of the Believers?" He said, "In which¹⁰ [there are] no plants¹¹." He said, "I⁸ grant thee, O Prince of the Believers, a hundred¹² waste estates of¹³ the deserts of the Sons of Asad." Then he laughed at him and said, "Make them¹⁴ all of them¹⁴ cultivated!¹⁴"

¹ with **إِيَّاهُ**, which stands last, § 46 b. ² accus. ³ **عَلَيْ** (after the verb) § 99 b, c. ⁴ § 99 b. ⁵ § 81 b. ⁶ § 99 b, c. ⁷ **لَمْ تَكُنْ**.
⁸ § 73 c with **قَدْ**. ⁹ § 62. ¹⁰ **مَا** and prep. with pronoun at the end of the sentence. ¹¹ § 81 b. ¹² § 67 c. ¹³ **مِنْ**. ¹⁴ fem. sing.

141. It is related¹, that Harûn al-Rašîd had (that to H. was²) a black slave-girl, of ugly mien³. Now he scattered one day gold-pieces⁴ among (between) the slave-girls; so the slave-girls set about⁵ gathering⁶ up the gold-pieces, whilst⁷ that slave-girl stood still, looking⁸ at the face of al-Rašîd. Some one asked (it was asked), "Dost thou⁹ not pick up the gold-pieces?" Then she said, "Verily what¹⁰ they seek [are] the gold-pieces, but (and) what¹⁰ I seek [is] the owner of the gold-pieces." Then her speech pleased him; so he placed her near [to him] and brought good upon her. Then the report got to the grandees, that¹¹ Harûn al-Rašîd was enamoured¹² of a black slave-girl. So after that had come to his knowledge, he sent after the whole of the grandees, until he had assembled them in his presence¹³. Then after he had commanded the bringing in¹⁴ of the slave-girls, he gave every one of¹⁵ them a goblet of¹⁵ chrysolite¹⁶ and commanded it to be thrown down¹⁴. But they declined [doing it] in a body (as a whole¹⁷). Then the turn came to (the affair got to) the ugly

1 § 73 c. 2 ^{أَنَّه كَانَ لَـ} § 95 b. 3 § 88 d. 4 indetermin.

5 § 91 a. 6 § 74 c, rem. (imp. pl. fem.) 7 § 100 a with part.

8 § 100 b imp. alone. 9 ^{أَلَا} fem. 10 part. pass. with suffix.

11 ^{بَيَّانَ}. 12 imperf. 13 ^{عِنْدَكَ}. 14 ^{بِـ} with inf. and suff. 15 ^{مِنْ}.

16 determ. 17 § 82 b.

slave-girl; but she threw down the goblet and broke it. So they said, "Look¹ at this girl, her name [is] ugly, and her manner [is] ugly, and her action [is] ugly. Then said to her the Caliph, "Why then didst thou break² it?" Then she said, "Thou didst³ command me to break it⁴; so I was of opinion that⁷ in its being broken [lay] a detriment⁵ with regard to the treasure of the Caliph, and in its not being broken (in the lack of its being broken) a detriment⁵ with regard to his command: and the detriment with regard to the first is fitter to keep intact⁶ the inviolability of the command of the Caliph. And I was of opinion that⁷ in its being broken [lay] my being qualified⁸ as⁹ a (the) crazy [one], and in keeping it intact my being qualified⁸ as⁹ a (the) disobedient [one]; and the first [is] more agreeable to me than the second." Then the grandees found¹⁰ that¹¹ to be beautiful of¹² her and praised her for¹³ it and excused the Caliph for¹⁴ loving her. And God knows best ([is] most knowing).

¹ plur. ² 2nd. pers. fem. perf. § 45. ³ § 73 e. ⁴ ب with inf.

⁵ § 95 a. ⁶ § 82 c, indetermin. inf. with following ل § 87. ⁷ أَتَى.

⁸ § 34 rem. ⁹ ب. ¹⁰ § 91 a. ¹¹ at the end. ¹² مِنْ.

¹³ عَلَى. ¹⁴ فِي.

GLOSSARY.

A.

أ ^٥ *part. interr.* often in the first half of an alternative question.

أَب ^٥ *st. c.* أَبُور (§ 65 a) father.

voc. أَبَوَانِ ^٥ *du.* أَبَاتِ ^٥ *pl.* آبَاءُ ^٥ ancestors.

إِبل ^٥ *coll. fem.* camels.

بَنِي ^٥ *v.* ابْنِ ^٥.

أَبَانِ ^٥ Abân, n. of a man.

أَبِي ^٥ *imp. a* not to wish, to refuse.

أَتِي ^٥ *imp. i* (*imper. c.* أَتَيْتِ ^٥).

فَاتِ ^٥ *c. acc.* to come, come to.

c. بِ ^٥ to bring.

IV c. acc. pers. et r. to give.

لِأَجْلِ ^٥ *because of.*

أَحَدِي ^٥ *fem.* أَحَدٌ ^٥ *one.*

أَخَذَ ^٥ *imp. u* take, take hold of, seize.

c. بِ ^٥ take hold of.

أَخَذَ ^٥ حَقَّ ^٥ اللَّهِ ^٥ مِنْهُ ^٥

to execute on a person the punishment decreed by God. *VIII* make, constitute.

أَخَرَ ^٥ *V* to draw back.

أَخِرَ ^٥ last, second.

الْآخِرَةَ ^٥ the other, next world.

أُخْرَى ^٥ *fem.* أُخْرَى ^٥ other.

أَدِيمَ ^٥ leather, esp. tanned.

إِدَاوَةٌ ^٥ water-vessel made of skins.

إِذَا ^٥ *conj.* when, if; *adv.* there! lo!

إِذَا ^٥ lo! there came..

إِذَا ^٥ *adv.* then, in this case.

أَذِنَ ^٥ *imp.* *u* to permit.

IV c. acc. pers. et ب ^٥
r. to inform, apprise.

أَذَنَ ^٥ *pl.* أَذَان ^٥ ear.

مُؤَذِّن ^٥ one who chants the call to prayer.

مَأْرَبُ ^٥ district in South-Arabia.

الأَرْدَن ^٥ Jordan, Jordan district.

أَرْض ^٥ *fem.* earth, land, ground.

أَرْضَةٌ ^٥ wood-fretter.

أَرْوَى ^٥ Arwâ, woman's n.

أَزْد ^٥ tribe of Azd.

الْأَزْدُ ^٥ the people of the tribe of Azd.

أَزْدِي ^٥ of the tribe of Azd.

سَمَا ^٥ *v.* اسْمَ.

أَسَا ^٥ *r.* to become consoled, take example by.

آصَفُ ^٥ Asaph.

أَكْفَ ^٥ ass's saddle.

أَكَلَ ^٥ *imp.* *u* to eat.

إِلَّا ^٥ (*إِنْ لَا*) except (§ 98); if not (in an oath: only).

الَّتِي ^٥ *fem.* الَّذِي (§ 13 a) he who; who, which.

أَلْف ^٥ *pl.* أَلَف ^٥ thousand.

النَّجْوَج ^٥ kind of aloes-wood.

إِلَه ^٥ a god.

إِلَهِ ^٥ *ex* آل ^٥ *et* آل ^٥ God, Allah.

اللَّهُمَّ ^٥ O God!

إِلَى *præp.* (§ 71 b) to, towards, in the direction of, opposite.

الْأَمْرُ إِلَيْكَ *command* belongs unto thee.

أَمْ *part. interr.* or, in the second half of an alternative question.

أَمْ *imp. u, c. acc.* to direct one's course by.

أُمَّهَاتُ *pl.* mothers.

أُمَّة *religious community*, people.

أَمَّا *part. c. seq.* ف as to, as regards.

أَمْرٌ *imp. u, c. acc. p. et r.* to order, command, *c.* *pers.* to have brought.

أَمْرٌ *VIII* to command.

أَمْرٌ *command, power*; thing, affair.

أَمِيرٌ *commander*, prince.

بِالْأَمْسِ *yesterday*.

أَمِنَ *IV* to believe.

أَمِينٌ *trustworthy*.

أَمَانَةٌ *a trust committed to one*.

أُمَيَّةٌ *Umayya*, man's name.

أَنَا *pron. I.*

أَنَّ (§ 75, 96) that (*conj.*).

أَنَّ (§ 95) that (*conj.*).

أَنَّ ذَلِكَ *that was*, because.

إِنْ (§ 102) if.

إِنَّ (§ 95) lo! verily, (often to be left untranslated).

أَنْتَ *pron.; fem.* أَنْتِ, thou.

أَنْثَى *II* to make feminine, to imitate women.

إِنْسٌ *coll.* human beings, mankind.

نَاسٌ *pl.* أَنْسَانٌ *et* نَاسٌ *human being*.

- بَعْدُ *imp. u vel* بَعِدَ *imp. a* to be distant.
 بَعْدُ *adv.* afterwards.
 بَعْدَ *præp.* after, after the departure, after the death of . . .
 مِنْ بَعْدِ after the death of.
 بَعِيدٌ distant, far off.
 بَعْضُ one (§ 88 b), portion, piece; some.
 بَعْضُ بَعْضٍ one another.
 بَغَى *VII* to be necessary.
 بَقِيَ *imp. a* to remain, remain over, remain alive.
 أَبُو بَكْرٍ Abû Bekr, name of the first Caliph.
 بَكَى *imp. i* to weep.
IV caus.
 بَلْ on the contrary, but.
- بَلَدٌ *pl.* بِلَادٌ land, village (*pl. coll.* country).
 بَلَغَ *imp. u, c. acc.* to reach, arrive at, come to one's knowledge.
II cause to reach.
 بِلْقِيسُ Bilkis, queen of Sheba.
 بَلَا *imp. u* to prove, test.
 بَلَى *part.* of course, but certainly.
 بِمَ (ex بِمَا) wherewith?
 بَنَى *imp. i* to build.
 يَبْنَى *inf.* building.
 ابْنٌ (§ 65 b بَنٌ § 60) son.
 ابْنُ ثَلَاثِ سِنِينَ three years old.
 بَنَى little son.
 بِنْتُ (§ 65 i) daughter.

بَاب *pl.* أَبْوَاب gate, door.

بَيْت *pl.* أَبْيَات house,
room.

بَيَاض whiteness, white
colour.

بَيْضَاء *fem.* أَبْيَض
white.

بَاع *med.* ي *III c. acc. pers.*
swear allegiance to.

بَانَ *med.* ي *IV* to be
clear, evident.

بَيْنَ *præp.* between.

بَيْنَ يَدَيْ ... *prop.* be-
tween the hands of
..., = before.

بَيْنُون name of a castle
in South Arabia.

• تَابُوت *masc.* coffin.

تَبَّ *X* to be well ar-
ranged, to be in good
order.

تَبِع *imp. a, c. acc.* follow.
VIII id.

تَحْتَ *præp.* under, under-
neath.

تَحْتِ مِنْ *id.*

تَدْمُرُ Tadmor, Palmyra in
Syria.

تَرَكَ *imp. u* to leave be-
hind, give up; to make
a thing to be . . . and
leave it so.

تِسْعَة *fem.* تِسْعُ nine.

تِلْكَ *fem.* (§ 12 c) that.

تِهَامَة name of the coast-
region of South-western
Arabia.

تِيْجَان *pl.* تَاج crown,
diadem.

تَيْم Taim, a man's name.

تَبَّت *imp. u* to be settled.
IV to settle, establish.

التَّعْلِيّ al-Ta'labī; n. of a
man † 427 Hej. (1035/6).

تَقَبَّ *imp. u* to perforate.

- ^sثَقْب hole, cavity.
^sثَقُل *imp. u* to be heavy.
II et IV caus.
^sثَقُل, ^sثَقُل weight.
^sثَكَل *imp. a, c. acc. pers.*
 to lose a child by death,
 (of a mother).
^sثَلَاث *fem.* ^sثَلَاثَة three.
^sثَلَاثَ عَشْرَة thirteen.
^sيَوْمُ الثَّلَاثَاءِ, ثَلَاثَاءُ
 Tuesday.
^sثُمَّ *adv.* then, thereupon.
^sثَمَان *fem.* ^sثَمَانِيَة eight.
^sثَمِين valuable.
^sثَنَى *X* to make an ex-
 ception.
^sثَنَاءُ praise, fame.
^sيَوْمُ الْاِثْنَيْنِ Monday.
^sاِثْنَا عَشَرَ twelve.
^sثَوْب garment.
- ^sثَار *med.* و to jump up,
 spring.
^sجَبَّة large garment.
^sجَبَد *imp. i* to draw, pull.
^sجَبَر *V* to behave proud-
 ly, overbearingly.
^sجَبَّار tyrannical.
^sجَبْرِيل Gabriel.
^sجَذَب *VIII* to draw, pull,
 seize.
^sجَرَّ *imp. u* to draw, draw
 along, drag.
^sالْجَرَّاح al-Jarrâh, name
 of a man.
^sجَرَى *imp. i* to run, flow.
IV caus.
^sجَارِيَة *pl.* جَوَارِ (§ 64 a)
 slave-girl, girl.
^sجِسْم body.
^sجَعَلَ place, put; impose
 (tribute); devote; begin
 (§ 74 c rem.).

جَفَّ *II* to dry (act.).

جَفَا *imp. u* to be thick,
coarse.

جَدَّ *imp. i* to be mighty,
exalted.

جِلْدٌ skin, hide.

جَلَسَ *imp. i* to sit down.
مَجَالِسٌ *pl. مَجْلِسٌ* seat,
session, council.

جُمَادَى month Jumādā.

جَمَعَ *imp. a* to bring to-
gether, assemble.

c. 2 بَيْنَ to summon
both together to his
presence.

VIII to be assembled,
to come together.

جُبْعَةٌ union.

يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ Friday.

جَمَاعَةٌ a number.

جَمَالٌ beauty, elegance.

جِنٌ *coll.* demons.

جِنِّي belonging to the
demons, demon.

جَنَانٌ *pl. جَنَّةٌ* orchard.

جَانِبٌ side.

أَجْنَحَةٌ *pl. جَنَاحٌ* wing.

جُنُودٌ *pl. جُنْدٌ* army, body
of troops.

جُنْدُبٌ Jundub, name of
a man.

جَهَّزَ *V c. ل r.* to equip,
prepare oneself for.

جَهْلٌ *imp. a* to be igno-
rant.

جَاهِلِيَّةٌ time of ig-
norance, paganism.

جَابَ *IV c. acc. pers. et إلى r.*
to give answer, ear, to
consent, to comply with
anyone's desire.

جَوَابٌ answer.

جَاد *med.* و to be generous.

جَادٌ بِنَفْسِهِ to be at the last gasp.

جُود *inf.*, beneficence, generosity.

جَاز *med.* و *c. acc.* to go past, pass, go by, exceed.

جَوْفٌ *inside*, centre.

جَوَاهِرُ *pl.* جَوَاهِرُ jewel.

جَاءَ *med.* ي *c. acc.* to come.

جَيْشٌ army.

حَبَّ *IV* to love, wish.
حُبُّ love.

حَبْرَةٌ *pl.* حَبَرٌ sort of hand-some wide garment.

حَبْسٌ prison.

حَبْلٌ rope.

حَتَّى until; so that;

in order that; sometimes to be translated finally.

حَجَّ *imp.* u to make the pilgrimage to Mecca.

حَجَجَةٌ *pl.* حَجَجٌ a pilgrimage to Mecca.

حُجَّةٌ good reason, ground of excuse.

حِجَابٌ curtain.

حَجَرٌ *coll.* stones.

حَدٌّ *pl.* حُدُودٌ ordinance, legal punishment.

حَدَّادٌ smith.

حَدَّثَ *II c. acc. pers.* to inform, relate, tell.

حَدَّثَ to talk, to converse.

حَدِيثٌ story, relation; oral tradition of the Prophet's sayings, tradition.

حَدَرَ *imp. u* to let flow
(run) down.

حَدَرَ *inf.*

حَرْب war, battle.

حَرْب Harb, name of
a man.

حَرَاب niche in mosque,

place of the imâm.

أَلْحَارِثُ al-Hārit, name of
a man.

حُرَّاس *pl.* حَارِس guard,
guardian.

حَرَكَ *II* to set in motion,
shake.

حَرَّمَ *imp. u, c.* عَلَى to be
forbidden to, unlawful
for.

II to declare to be for-
bidden, unlawful.

حَرَم sacred territory,
district of the temple
at Mecca.

حُرْمَةٌ *pl.* حُرَم woman.

أَلْحَرَمُ al-Muharram,
the first month.

حَزَّ *imp. u* to cut off.

حَزِن to be troubled, dis-
tressed, sad.

IV to trouble, dis-
tress.

حَسِبَ *imp. i, c. 2 acc.* to
think (it) to be.

حَسَنَ *IV* to do well, to
know well.

أَحْسَنُ *elat.* حَسَن
beautiful, good.

أَلْحَسَنُ al-Hasan;
proper name of a man;
son of the Caliph
'Alī.

حُسْن beauty.

حَشَمَ *coll.* followers, ser-
vants.

حَصَبَ *imp. i vel u* to
pelt with small stones.

حِصْنٌ *pl.* حُصُونٌ fortress,
castle.

حَصَى *coll.* small stones,
pebbles.

حَضَرَ *imp. u, c. acc. pers.*
to be there, to be
present.

IV to bring in, cause
to be present.

VIII c. acc. approach
anyone, of death.
pass. to be at the point
of death.

حَفَرَ *imp. i* to dig, dig out.
VIII idem.

حَافِرٌ hoof.

حَفْصٌ Ḥafṣ, man's name.

حَفِظَ *imp. a* to take care
of, guard.

VIII c. ر. take heed.

حَقٌّ truth, certainty;
due, right, appointed
portion.

حَقَّةٌ box.

ر. ب. حَقٌّ *elat.* حَقِيقٌ
r. worthy.

حَكَمَ *imp. u* to decide,
give judgment.

حِكْمَةٌ wisdom.

حَلَّ *imp. u* to loose, unbind.
IV to declare lawful,
to permit.

حُلَّةٌ *pl.* حُلَلٌ hand-
some wide garment.

حَلَفَ *imp. i* to swear.

حَلَقَ *II* to shave, shear.

حَمْدٌ praise, thanks.

حَمْدٌ Muḥammed (the
praised one.)

حِمَارٌ ass.

حِمْيَرٌ Himyar, a people
in South Arabia.

حَطَّ الحِمْيَرِيَّةُ writing
of the Himyarites.

حِمَصْ Homs (Emesa),

a town in Syria.

حَمَلَ *imp. i* to take up, carry; to carry off; to bear.

c. acc. pers. et عَلَى *r.* to mount anyone on; to incite to.

حَمَلَ *inf.* carrying.

حَمِيَّة care for the defence of right, indignation.

حُنَيْن Hunain, valley and hamlet near Mecca.

حَاجَ *med.* و *VIII c.* إِلَى to want, have need of.

حَاجَةٌ want, need; what one has need of.

أَحْوَجَ *elat.* more in need (of).

حَاطَ *med.* و *IV c.* بِ *r.* to surround, comprehend, discover.

حَائِطٌ *pl.* حَيْطَانٌ

wall.

حَالَ *med.* و, to pass by, pass over one.

حَوْلَ year.

حَوْلَ *præp.* around.

أَحْوَلَ squinting.

حِينَ when; if.

يَكَيَّ *imp.* يَكَيَّا *vel* حَيَّ to live.

IV to bring to life.

حَيَاة life, life-time.

خَبَرَ *IV c. acc. pers. et* بِ *r.* to tell, inform, relate.

VIII to prove, test.

أَخْبَارٌ *pl.* خَبَرٌ story, account, report.

خَبَزَ *imp. i* to make bread, bake.

خُبْزٌ bread, loaf.

خَتَمَ *imp. i* to seal.

خَتَمَ ^s *inf.* sealing up.

خَاتَمَ ^s seal.

خَيْتَمَةُ ^s *Haitama*, name of a woman.

خَدَّ ^s *imp. u* to dig, dig a pit.

خَدَّ ^s *inf.*

خَدِيعَةٌ ^s deception.

خَدَمَ ^s *coll.* servants.

خَادِمٌ ^s servant.

خِدْمَةٌ ^s service, performance of service.

خَرَّ ^s *imp. i* to throw oneself down, fall.

خَرَجَ ^s *imp. u* to go out, go forth; depart; to come, come out (into public).

IV to draw out, drive out.

X to bring out.

خَرَجَ ^s tax on a slave,

poll-tax of free non-Muslims.

خُرُوجٌ ^s *inf.* going forth; appearance (of a prophet).

خَرَزٌ ^s *nom. unit.* خَرَزَةٌ ^s small shell, jewel.

خَرَطَ ^s *VIII* to draw the sword from the scabbard.

خَرَقَ ^s to get a hole in it, be cleft.

خَازِنٌ ^s treasurer.

خَشِنٌ ^s rough, coarse.

خُضْرَةٌ ^s verdure, vegetables.

خَضَعَ ^s *imp. a* bow down.

خَطٌّ ^s writing, character.

خَطَبَ ^s *imp. u, c. acc.* to woo, demand in marriage.

خِطْبَةٌ ^s *inf.* wooing.

- الْحَطَّابُ al-Haṭṭāb,
 a man's name.
 خَفَّ *imp. i* to be light.
 IV to be little bur-
 dened, encumbered.
 خَلَّ IV *c. ب* *rei* to omit,
 not to do one's duty in
 a thing.
 خَالِدٌ Hâlid, man's name.
 خَلَصَ II to let go free, to
 let in.
 خَلَعَ *inf.* removal, depo-
 sition.
 خَلَفَ II to leave behind.
 VIII to be different,
 to differ in opinion,
 disagree.
 X *c. عَلَى* to appoint
 as successor, as Caliph,
 over.
 خَلْفَ *præp.* behind.
 خِلَافَةٌ caliphate, reign
 of a Caliph.
- خَلَقَ *coll.* people.
 خُلُقٌ *pl.* أَخْلَاقٌ na-
 tural parts, mental at-
 tribute.
 مَخْلُوقٌ worn out.
 خَلَا *imp. u* to be empty,
 to be past (of time).
 خَمِرٌ VIII to be, become
 fermented, mature.
 خَمْرٌ *fem.* fermented
 drink, wine.
 خَمْسٌ five.
 خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ fifteen.
 خَمْسُونَ fifty.
 خَمْس مِائَةٍ five hun-
 dred.
 خَنَثَ II to make effem-
 inate, soft.
 خَنْجَرٌ dagger.
 خَاضَ *med. و* to wade
 through.

خَافَ (*pro* خَوْف) *imp. a*
to fear.

خَوْف *fear.*

خَارَ *med. ي VIII* choose,
choose for oneself.

خَيْرٌ (*elat. id.*) good;
prosperity.

خَيْطٌ thread.

خَيْلٌ *coll.* horses.

خَيَالَةٌ phantom, spec-
tral vision.

تَخْيِيلٌ (*inf. II*) *pl.*

تَخَايِيلٌ phantasmago-
ria.

دَابَّةٌ *pl. دَوَابٌّ* beast of bur-
den; animal for riding.

دُبُرٌ, دُبْرٌ hinder-part.

دِيبَاجٌ brocade.

دَخَلَ *c. عَلَى* to come upon;
to go into.

IV to bring in, insert.

دَاخِلٌ inside, inter-
nal.

دُرٌّ *coll. (nom. unit. دُرَّةٌ)*
pearl.

دَرَأَ *imp. a* to push away,
avert (a punishment).

دَرَكَ *IV* to reach, over-
take, come upon.

دِرْهَمٌ drachma, piece of
silver.

دَرَى *imp. i* to know.
IV caus.

دَعَا *imp. u* to call, call in,
name.

c. إِلَى to invite, call
upon, request.

c. بِ to call upon.

دَعَوَى claim.

دَفَعَ *imp. a* to push, repulse;
to give; deliver up.

دَفَعٌ *inf.* defending,
defence.

دَفَنَ *imp. i* to bury.

مَدْفَنٌ place of burial.

دَلَّ *imp. u, c. عَلَى r.* to direct, lead, indicate, guide to.

دَلَّ بِحُجَّةٍ to prove by means of a valid argument.

دَلِيلٌ *c. عَلَى* guide, sign, indication.

دَنَا *imp. u, c. مِنْ* to approach, come near to.

دُنْيَا *fem. (masc. أَدْنَى)* world; earthly things; earthly possessions.

دُوْدٌ *nom. unit.* دُوْدَةٌ worm.

دَاوُدُ (§ 7 b *not.*) pronounce *dā'ūdu* David.

دَارَ *IV* to turn oneself, go round, to make to fly.

دَارٌ *pl.* دُورٌ dwell-

ling, house, mansion, court.

دَامَ *med. و* to continue.

III to continue, keep on doing anything.

دُونَ *præp.* on this side of, below; with the exception of, except.

مِنْ دُونَ idem.

دَيْكٌ cock.

دِينٌ religion.

دِينَارٌ denarius, gold-piece.

ذَا *pron.* (§ 12 a) this.

مَاذَا (§ 14) what?

ذَبَحَ *imp. a* to cut in pieces.

ذُرِّيَّةٌ offspring.

ذِرَاعٌ ell, cubit.

ذَكَرَ *imp. u, c. acc.* to remember, think of; mention, name.

ذِكْرِي *fem.* memory.

ذَلَّ *IV* to humble, abase,
crush to earth.

V to submit, hum-
ble oneself.

أَذَلَّةٌ *pl.* ذَلِيلٌ hum-
bled.

تِلْكَ *fem.* ذَلِكَ *pron.* (§ 12c)
that.

ذَمَّرَ *V* to be excited, dis-
contented with oneself.

ذَنْبٌ tail.

ذَهَبَ *imp. a* to go, go
away; conduct oneself.

c. إِلَى *r.* to hold an
opinion.

ذَهَبٌ gold.

مَذْهَبٌ course, man-
ner of acting.

ذُو *fem.* ذَاتٌ *pl.* أَوْلُو *c. gen.*
(§ 65; 88b) owner of...,
possessor of ..., *fem.*
affair of ...

رَأْسٌ head (also *fem.*).

رَبِّيسٌ leader.

رَأَى *imp.* يَرَى to see, to
look at, be of opinion,
believe, judge to be
right, *c. 2 acc.* find
anything to be.

IV c. 2 acc. أَرَى show.

رَأْيٌ insight, advice.

رَبٌّ Lord, God.

رَبِيعٌ Rabi', name of a
month.

أَرْبَعَةٌ *fem.* أَرْبَعٌ four.

رَجَسٌ dirty.

رَجَعَ *imp. i* to turn back,
return, to answer.

رَجُلٌ *fem.* foot, leg.

رَجَالٌ *pl.* رَجُلٌ man.

رَحْلٌ camel's saddle.

رَحِيلٌ travelling, jour-
ney.

رَحِمَ *imp. a, c. acc. pers.*

to have pity on
anyone.

رَحِيمٌ compassionate,
merciful.

الرَّحْمَنُ the Compas-
sionate, i. e. God.

رَحَى fem. mill.

رَحَى الْحَرْبِ the mill
of battle, the thick
of the fight.

رَخِيَ vel رَخُو to be lax.
IV to make lax, to
let hang down.

رُخَاءٌ gentle, soft (of
the wind).

رَدَّ imp. u to bring back.
VIII to turn back,
to turn.

قَبْلَ أَنْ يَرْتَدَّ إِلَيْكَ
طَرْفَكَ, before thou
hast given a single
look.

رَدَّ inf. giving back,
sending back, returning.

رَزَقَ imp. u to give, do-
nate, grant, endow.

رِزْقٌ sustenance, food.

رَسَلَ IV to send.

رَسُولٌ pl. رُسُلٌ messenger.

رَضَعَ II to set (of jewels).

رَضِيَ imp. a, c. acc. to be
content, to acquiesce,
to be pleased, at.

رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ may
God be pleased with
him.

مَرْضَاةٌ inf. satisfac-
tion, pleasure.

رَعَدَ VIII to tremble,
quake.

رَعَى imp. a guard, tend.
رَاعٍ herdsman, pastor.

رَعِيَّةٌ coll. subjects,
people.

رَغِبَ *imp. a* to desire eagerly; *c.* عَنِ to cease desiring, to abstain from.

رَفَعَ *imp. a* to raise up, raise (voice); to take up, lift, take away, put away, remove.

VIII to rise, rise up, soar aloft; to go up, to be high, valuable; to be advanced (of a day).

رَقَدَ *imp. u* to sleep.

رَقْدَةً sleep.

رَقَعَ II mend, patch.

رُقَيَّةُ Rukayya, woman's n.

رَكَبَ *imp. a, c. acc.* to mount a horse, ride.

رَكَابٌ *coll.* beast for riding.

رَكَضَ *imp. u* to gallop.

رُكْعَةٌ single act of bowing in prayer. (For every prayer there are appointed a certain fixed number of bowings.)

رُكْوَةٌ water-vessel made of leather.

رُكْيَا *pl.* رُكْيَا cistern containing water.

رَمَى *imp. i, c.* رَمَى to throw, throw at, pelt.

رَمَحَ V to reel, stagger.

رَهَجٌ cloud of dust.

رَمَدٌ *med.* و to dung.

رِيحٌ (pro رِيحٌ) *fem., pl.*

رياح wind.

رَادَ *med., IVc. acc.* to wish, want, intend.

رَاغَ *imp. u* to turn away,

to turn this way and that.

رَوَى *imp. i* to transmit, relate (of a tradition).

رَوَى *imp. a* to quench the thirst.

رَوَى quenching the thirst (of water).

رَوَايَةٌ tradition, report.

زَبُورٌ Holy writ, orig. the Book of Psalms.

زُجَاجٌ glass, piece of glass.

زُجَاجَةٌ id. *nom. un.*

زَجَرَ *imp. u* to chide, reprove, reprimand, rebuke.

زَحَامٌ crowd, crush.

زَعْفَرَانٌ saffron.

زُعَمَاءُ *pl.* spokesman, chieftain.

زَفَّ *imp. u* to conduct a bride to the house of her husband.

زَمَعَ *IV c.* عَلَى to determine, resolve upon doing a thing.

زَمَنٌ time, reign.

زَهَدَ *imp. a* to abstain, shun, abhor. *II caus.*

زُهْدٌ temperance, abstinence.

زَاهِدٌ *elat.* أَزْهَدٌ temperate, dispassionate.

زَهَقَ *imp. a* to come to nought.

زَهْوَقٌ coming to nought.

زَهَا *imp. u* to shoot up, thrive well, attain full growth.

الزَّوْبَعَةُ al-Zaubā'a, name of a demon.

زاج *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc.*
et مِّن to marry (act.);
c. acc. to marry (neut.)
V c. acc. refl.

زَوْجَةٌ ^s wife.

زَارَ *med. و imp. u to visit.*

زَالَ *med. و imp. a (c. acc.)*
to cease (being any-
thing; esp. negatively).

زَوَالٌ ^s *inf. mid-day,*
noon or afternoon.

زَوَّى *V تَزَيَّأَ et تَزَيَّأَ (ex*
تَزَوَّى) to assume the
guise of, to dress one-
self.

زَيٌّ ^s appearance, dress.

زَوَايَا ^s *pl. زَاوِيَةٌ cor-*
ner.

زَادَ *med. و imp. i, c. 2 acc.*
to give more, add to.

زَيْدٌ ^s *inf. increase.*

زَانَ *med. و II to make a*
thing seem good to
anyone.

زَاوٍ ^s *part. § 70 d; 74 a.*

زَاوٍ ^s *teak.*

زَائِرٌ ^s *remaining, all.*

زَالَ *imp. a, c. 2 acc. to ask*
anyone for.

عَنْ *c. acc. pers. et*
to ask after.

سُؤَالٌ ^s *inf. question.*

سَبَّ *imp. u to revile.*

سَبَبٌ ^s cause, reason.

سَبَاٌ ^s Sheba, town and dis-
 trict in South Arabia.

سَبْعَةٌ ^s *fem. سَبْعٌ seven.*

سَبَاعٌ ^s *pl. سَبْعٌ beast*
of prey.

سَبِيلٌ ^s *masc. vel fem. way,*
right way.

سِتّ fem. سِتَّة six.

سِتُّون sixty.

سَتَرَ *imp. u, vel i* to hide.

سَجَدَ *imp. u, c.* ل to prostrate oneself, προσ-
κυβεῖν.

سُجُود *inf.* prostra-
tion, bowing down.

مَسْجِدٌ mosque.

سَجَّان gaoler.

سِحْر enchantment.

سَكْر the time before
daybreak.

سَخِرَ *II* to make subserv-
ient, subdue.

سَدَ *imp. u* to stop up,
obstruct.

سَرَّ *imp. u, c. acc.* to rejoice,
give pleasure to.

سِرّ *pl.* أَسْرَار secret.

سُرَّة navel.

سَرِير throne.

سَرْج saddle.

سَرَعَ *IV* to hurry, be in
a hurry

سَرِيع, *elat.* أَسْرَع
quick, swift.

سَعْد Sa'd, man's name.

سَاعِد *pl.* سَوَاعِد fore-
arm.

سَعِيد Sa'id, name of
man.

أَلْمَسْعُودِي al-Mas'ūdī,
name of a man. Au-
thor of various histor-
ical works, † 345
or 346 A. Hej. (956
or 957 A. D.).

سَفَر *IV* to remove some-
thing which is in front
of another thing.

أَسْفَلَ *elat.* سَافِل low.

سُفْيَانُ Sufyân, name
of a man.

سَقَى *imp. i, c. 2 acc.* to
give to drink.

IV c. 2 acc. id., to
serve wine to.

سَكِرَ *imp. a* to be, become
drunk.

سَكَرَانُ drunk.

سَكَنَ *imp. u* to dwell, in-
habit.

مَسْكِينٌ poor.

سَلْحِينُ name of a castle
in South Arabia.

سَلَطَ *II* to appoint as
ruler.

سُلْطَانٌ might, rule,
power; plausible ex-
cuse, plea.

سَلَكَ *imp. u* to enter, trav-
el along in; *c. acc. obj.*
et في loci vel c. acc. obj.
et ب instr. to make to

go in or through, in-
sert, pierce through.

سَلَّمَ *II* to grant safety,
prosperity.

IV c. 2 سَلَّمَ to declare
oneself resigned to God;
to become a Muslim.

سَلَامٌ immunity, wel-
fare, safety.

سَلْمَانُ Salmân, name
of a man.

سُلَيْمَانُ Solomon.

إِسْلَامٌ (*inf. IV*) Islâm.

سَمَّ *imp. u* to put poison
in, to poison.

سَمٌّ poison.

سَمَاحَةٌ *inf.* munificence.

سَمِعَ *imp. a* to hear.

سَمَكٌ *coll.* fish.

سَمَا *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc.*
et ب to call, name.

سَبَاء *heaven.*

اسْم *name.*

س *tooth, age.*

سنة *pl. سنن ordinance, institution, tradition.*

سند *IV to support; to authenticate a tradition of Muhammed by adducing an unbroken series of the persons who have handed it down.*

مسند *propped up, name of the Himyaritic writing.*

سنة *pl. nom. سنون (§ 53 b; * 65 m) year.*

سُهَيْل *Suhail, the star Canopus.*

سَاء *med. و to be evil. IV to make evil.*

سوء *evil, wickedness, injury.*

سَوْدَاء *fem. أسود black, dark-coloured.*

أساودة *pl. utensils.*

سيد *lord, master.*

أساور *pl. سوار bracelet.*

سوط *whip.*

ساعة *hour, while.*

الآن *now, at once.*

ساق *fem. calf of leg.*

أسواق *pl. سوق market, street.*

سوى *VIII to be uniform, equal.*

سار *med. سى imp. i to travel, journey, go on.*

سيرة *course of life, conduct.*

مسير *inf. travelling, journey.*

مَسِيرَةٌ ^s space traversed

in journeying.

سَيْف ^s sword.

شَاةٌ ^s sheep.

شَامٌ ^s Syria.

شَبِهَ ^s *II* to compare.

IV to resemble.

V *c.* سَبَّ to seek to resemble, to imitate.

شَجَرَةٌ ^s *nom. unit.* شَجَرٌ ^s tree, shrub.

شَخَصَ ^s *imp. a* to gaze fixedly at, to go forth, travel.

شَدَّ ^s *imp. u* to tie, bind fast.

أَشَدُّ ^s *elat.* شَدِيدٌ ^s

strong; vehement, energetic; powerful.

شَرٌّ ^s (*elat. id.*) bad.

شَرَبَ ^s *imp. a* to drink.

شَرِبَ ^s *inf.* drinking.

شَرَابٌ ^s wine, strong drink.

شَرَفَ ^s *IV* to be high, prominent.

أَشْرَافٌ ^s *pl.* شَرِيفٌ ^s high-born, noble, eminent.

شَرَى ^s *VIII* to buy, purchase for (*مِنْ*).

شُعْبَةٌ ^s Shu'ba, man's name.

شَعْرَةٌ ^s *nom. unit.* شَعَرٌ ^s hair.

شَعِيرٌ ^s barley.

شَعْرَاءُ ^s *fem.* أَشْعَرُ ^s hairy, having much hair.

شَغَلَ ^s *VIII c.* بَ to occupy oneself, be occupied with.

شَكَرَ ^s *imp. u* to thank, to be thankful.

شَكَاَ ^s *imp. u, c.* إِلَى ^s *et acc.* to complain to one person of another.

شَمْسٌ ^s *fem.* sun.

شَدَّ VIII wrap oneself in.

c. عَلَى to wrap one's garments over.

شُبْلَةٌ kind of shirt, large wrapper.

شِمَالٌ left.

شَنَارٌ shame, disgrace.

شَنْفٌ pl. شُوفٌ ear-ring.

شَهِدَ imp. a to give testimony, to testify;

c. عَلَى to convince oneself as to;

c. acc. pers. to be with anyone.

III c. acc. to see, be an eye-witness.

شَهِدٌ pl. شُهُودٌ witness.

شَهَادَةٌ testimony.

شَهْرٌ pl. أَشْهُرٌ month.

شَارَ med. و IV c. عَلَى p. to give anyone good advice.

شَاَرَةٌ form, appearance.

شَاءَ med. ي imp. a to will, wish.

شَيْءٌ thing, something.

شَادَ med. ي II to plaster over, to build high.

شَيْطَانٌ pl. شَيَاطِينُ devil, Satan.

شَاعَ med. ي to spread, become known.

شِيمَةٌ pl. شِيَمٌ nature, innate disposition, habit.

صَبَّ imp. u to pour, pour out.

صَبَّ inf. pouring.

صَبَحَ IV to rise early; to enter upon the time of the early morning.

صُبْحٌ daybreak.

صَبَاحٌ early morning.

مُصَبَّغَةٌ ^s dyed garment.

صَحِيحٌ ^s right, true.

صَحِبَ to be a companion.

X take as companion.

أَصْحَابٌ ^s pl. صَاحِبٌ adherent; friend, companion; lord; man, owner of..(cfr. § 88b).

صَاحِبُ مَكْسٍ tax-gatherer.

أَصْحَابُ الْحَدِيثِ the relaters of traditions.

صَحِيفَةٌ ^s leaf.

صَحْنٌ ^s court, court-yard.

صَخْرٌ ^s big stone.

صَخْرٌ ^s Sahr, name of a man.

صَدَّ ^s imp. u to turn away from, alienate.

صَدْرٌ ^s pl. صُدُورٌ breast, the front part, place of honour.

دَفَعَ فِي صَدْرِهِ to reject the good advice of a person.

صَدَقَ ^s imp. u to speak the truth.

صِدْقٌ ^s inf. truth, veracity.

صَرَّ ^s imp. u to tie up, bind, collect.

صُرَّةٌ ^s pl. صُرَرٌ purse.

صَرَحَ ^s state-room.

صَرَخَ ^s imp. u to call out, call loudly.

صَرَفَ ^s imp. i to turn away, remove, depose.

صَرَفٌ ^s inf.

VII c. عَنْ ^s pers. to go away from, to leave.

صِرْوَاهُ Sirwāh, name of a castle in South Arabia.

صَعِدَ *imp. a, c. acc.* to
go up, ascend.

صَغُرَ *imp. u,* to be small,
covered with ignominy.

صَغِيرٌ *elat.* أَصْغَرُ small,
young.

صَفَّ *VII* to stand, place
themselves in a row.

صُفوفٌ *pl.* صف row.

أَصْفَرُ yellow.

صَفُّورِيَّةٌ Sepphoris,
town in Galilee.

مُصْطَفًى proper name of
a man (chosen, elect).

صَلَبَ *imp. i* to crucify,
to have crucified.

صَلَحَ *imp. u* to be good,
pious.

IV c. acc. pers. to
make to thrive.

c. مِنْ to put in bet-
ter order, condition.

صَلَا *II* to pray.

صَلَاةٌ, صَلَوةٌ prayer.

صَلَعٌ § 10.

صَنَعَ *imp. a* to make, fab-
ricate, construct.

صَنْعَاءُ Ṣan'ā, large
town in Yemen.

مَصْنَعَةٌ *pl.* مَصَانِعُ castle.

صَوْتٌ voice.

صُورَةٌ figure, form.

صُوفٌ wool.

صَاحَ *med.* صَاحَ to cry,
shout, scold.

صَيَّاحٌ *inf.* crying,
scolding.

صَارَ *med.* صَارَ *c. acc.* to be-
come.

II to make to become;
to make to be, to have
brought.

صَيَّاقِلَةٌ *pl.* صَيَّقِلٌ sword-
cutler, sword-polisher.

ضَجَعَ *VIII* to lie on one's
side.

- ضَرَبَ *imp. i* to beat, strike
off, sprinkle.
- ضَرَبَ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ he
threw him to the ground
- ضَرْبٌ sort, kind.
- ضَرْبَةٌ single act of
striking.
- ضَمَّ *imp. u* to conjoin
with, associate with.
- ضَاعَ *med. ي* to perish,
get lost.
- ضَيْعَةٌ *pl.* ضِيَاعٌ estate,
country-place.
- طَاوَأَ to lower.
- طَبْرِيَّةٌ Tiberias.
- طَبَعَ *imp. u, c. acc. obj. et ب*
mater. to press upon.
- طَحَنَ *imp. a* to grind.
- طَرَفٌ look, glance.
- طَرْفٌ portion, end.
- مُطَرَفٌ nickname of a
man (the elegant one).
- طَرِيقَةٌ way, manner of
acting.
- طَعَامٌ food, dish, meal.
- مَطْعَمٌ eating, food.
- طَعَنَ *imp. u vel a* to smite,
to give anyone a blow
or thrust.
- طَعْنَةٌ blow, thrust.
- طَلَبَ *imp. u* to seek.
- طَلَبَ مِنْ *pers.* to ask any-
one for, demand.
- أَبُو طَالِبٍ Abū Tālib,
name of a man.
- طَلَعَ *imp. u* to rise (of the
sun).
- VIII *c.* طَلَعَ to look at,
see.
- طَلَّقَ VII to go away,
depart.
- طَلَّقَ open, pleas-
ant.
- طَلَّاقٌ divorce from
a wife.

طَبَعَ *imp. a, c. في rei* to covet, strive after, desire eagerly.

مِطْهَرَةٌ *water-vessel made of leather (for ablutions).*

طَوْرٌ *time, state, measure, limit.*

طَاعَ *med. و* to obey, to be complaisant.

IV id.

طَاعَةٌ *obedience, submissiveness.*

طَوَقٌ *pl. أَطْوَاقٌ neck-lace.*

طَاقَةٌ *power, ability to do anything.*

طَالَ *med. و IV* to make long, to remain a long time at.

طُولٌ *length, extent in point of length.*

طَوَى *imp. i* to fold, conceal.

طَارَ *med. ي* to fly.

طَيْرٌ *pl. طُيُورٌ bird (singular also coll.).*

ظَلَّ *IV* to shade.

ظَلَمَ *imp. i* to treat unjustly, injure.

ظَهَرَ *imp. a* to appear, to come to light.

IV to make to appear.

ظَهْرٌ *back, upper portion.*

عَبَدَ *imp. u* to pray to, worship, adore.

عَبْدٌ *slave, servant.*

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ 'Abdallāh, name of a man (worshipper of Allah).

عِبَادَةٌ *worship.*

عُبَيْدَةٌ 'Ubaida, name of a man.

أَلْعَبَّاسُ al-'Abbās, name
of a man.

عَبَاءٌ mantle.

عِتْقٌ nobility, rank.

عَتِيقٌ freed, noble, old.

عُثْمَانُ 'Uṭmān, name of
a man.

عَجِبَ *imp. a, c.* مِنْ to be
astonished at.

عَجِيبٌ wonderful, as-
tonishing.

عَجَائِبُ *pl.* عَجِيبَةٌ won-
derful thing, marvel.

عَجَمٌ *coll.* barbarians, esp.
Persians.

عَاجَنَ *imp. i* to knead.

عَاجِنٌ dough.

عَدَّ *X c. l* to make one-
self ready, to prepare
oneself.

عَدَّةٌ number.

عَدَا *V c. acc.* to go be-
yond, exceed.

عَدُوٌّ *pl.* أَعْدَاءٌ enemy.

عَذَّبَ *II* to punish, torture.

عَذَابٌ punishment,
torture.

عَذَلَ *imp. u vel i* to blame.

عَرَبٌ *coll.* Arabs.

أَعْرَابِيٌّ Bedouin.

عَرَّشَ throne, a throne with
a canopy over it.

عَرَضَ *imp. i, c. l pers.* to
come across, occur,
happen.

عَلَى to offer to any-
one, propose.

عَلَى to advance towards.

عَرْضٌ breadth, extent
as to breadth.

عَرَّعَ cypresses.

عَرَفَ *imp. i* to perceive,
know.

أَعْرَافٌ ^س *pl.* عُرُفٌ comb
on the head of a bird.

عَرِيفٌ ^س chief, prince.

عَرَقٌ ^س sweat, perspiration.

عَزَّ ^س *imp. i* to be strong,
mighty.

الْعَزَّى ^س al-'Uzzā, name
of a goddess of the
pre-islamitic Arabs,
esp. of the Koreishites.

عَبْدُ الْعَزَّى 'Abdul-
'Uzzā, a man's name.

عَزَلَ ^س *inf.* deposition, re-
moval.

عَلَى ^س *imp. i, c.* عَلِي to
decide, to resolve upon
anything.

عَسْكَرٌ ^س army.

مُعَسْكَرٌ ^س camp.

عَشْرَةٌ ^س *fem.* عَشْرٌ ten.

عِشْرُونَ twenty.

عَشِيرَةٌ ^س tribe, kins-
folk.

عَاشُورَاءُ 'Ashūra, fes-
tival on the tenth
day of the month
Muḥarram; orig. the
Jewish feast of atone-
ment.

مَعْشَرٌ ^س assembly, to-
tality.

عَصْرٌ ^س afternoon, about
two hours before sun-
set; generation, age.

عَصَا stick, staff.

عَصَى ^س *imp. i, c. acc.* to re-
bel against, disobey.

أَبُو الْعَاصِ Abu-l-'Āṣi
a man's name.

عَطِشَ ^س *imp. a* to be, be-
come thirsty.

عَطا ^س *IV c. 2 acc.* to give.

عَظِيمٌ ^س *elat.* أَعْظَمُ great,
mighty, glorious.

عُفَيْرٌ *vel* عَفِيرٌ (?) proper
name of a bird.

عَفْرِيتٌ evil, clever de-
mon.

عَفَّانٌ Affān, man's name.

عَفَا *imp. u, c.* عَنْ *pers.* to
forgive anyone.

عَقَبٌ offspring.

عَقَبَةٌ mountain-road,
pass.

عُقْبَةُ 'Ukba, a man's
name.

عُقَابٌ a kind of eagle,
sea-eagle.

عَقِلَ *imp. i vel* عَقِلَ *imp. a*
to be of sound mind,
sensible.

عَقْلٌ understanding;
reason, intelligence.

عَقِيلٌ 'Akīl, a man's
name.

عَكَّا Acco, St. Jean d'Acre.

عَلَجَ *III* to treat, manage,
labour at, exercise skill
upon.

عَلِجٌ big, strong
heathen.

عُلُوفَةٌ *pl.* عُلْفٌ fodder.

عَلِمَ *imp. a* to perceive,
know.

c. ب. be cognizant of.

عِلْمٌ knowledge;
science.

عَلَمٌ sign; something
whereby a thing can
be recognized.

عَالِمٌ *pl.* عِلْمَاءُ, *elat.*

أَعْلَمُ learned man.

عَالِمٌ creature.

عَلَا *imp. u* to be high. .

c. عَلَى to behave proud-
ly, insolently to.

عَلَّاهُ بِالسَّوْطِ he struck
him with the whip.

VI to be exalted, esp.
of God.

عَلَى *præp.* (§ 71 b) over,
on, upon, on the basis,
ground of, against.

ب. عَلَى بِع. *v.*
هِيَ عَلَى ثَلَاثَةِ أَيَّامٍ she
is three days' journey
distant.

عَلِيّ 'Alī, the fourth
Caliph.

أَعْلَى *elat.* عال loud.

عَمَّ *imp. u* to be, become uni-
versal, comprehensive.

عَمَدَ *imp. i, c.* إِلَى to be-
take oneself to, have
recourse to.

عُمَرَ 'Omar.

عَامِرٍ 'Amir, man's name.

عَمْرُو (§ 65 n) pron. 'Am-
run, a man's name.

عُمُقُ depth, distance to
the bottom.

عَمِلَ *imp. a* to make, do,
construct.

X to employ anyone
as . . .

عَمَلٌ *pl.* أَعْمَالٌ work,
deed, action, handicraft;
territory, province.

عَامِلٌ *pl.* عُمَّالٌ admin-
istrator, vice-roy.

عَمِيَ *imp. a* to be, become
blind.

عَنْ *præp.* from, away
from; about, con-
cerning, according
to.

عَنْبَرٌ ambergris. [by, in.

عِنْدَ *præp.* at, near, with,

عِنْدَ ذَلِكَ under these
circumstances.

عِنْدَ مِنْ from,
French de chez.

عُنُقٌ *pl.* أَعْنَاقُ neck.
KK

عاج *med.* و IX to be crooked.

عَادَ *imp. a, c.* عَلَى to return, to repeat, do again.

عُود *s* aloes-wood.

عَادَة *s* habit, costum, wont, ordinary manner of acting.

عَانَ *med.* و to seek refuge.

X to ask for protection; to say: اَعُوذُ بِاللّٰهِ (Sura 114) „I seek protection by God!”

عَانَ *med.* و X to help oneself.

مُعَاوِيَةُ Mu'āwiyā, the first Omayyad Caliph. (661—79).

عَار disgrace.

عَائِشَةُ 'A'īša, woman's n.

أَعْيُنُ *fem., pl.* عَيْنُ eye.

عُيُونُ *pl.* well, spring.

غَدَا *V* to breakfast, take an early meal.

غُرَّةٌ *s* first, beginning (of a month).

غَرَبَ *imp. u* to set, (of the sun).

غَزَا *ult.* و to make a raid, warlike expedition.

غَسَلَ *imp. i* to wash.

غَسَلَ *inf.* ablution.

غَوَاشٍ *pl.* غَاشِيَةٌ saddle-cover.

غَضَّ to be choked up.

غَضٌّ fresh.

غَضِبَ *imp. a* to be, become angry.

غَضَبٌ anger, wrath.

غَضِبَ angry.

غَطَاءٌ cover, lid.

غِلَالَةٌ *pl.* غِلَائِلُ under-
garment.

غَالِبٌ *elat.* أَغْلَبُ conquer-
ing, predominant.

غَلَسَ darkness of night,
at the commencement
of dawn. [ness.

غِلْظَةٌ roughness, harsh-
غَلَقَ *II et IV* to bolt,
lock,

غُلَامٌ *pl.* غِلْمَانُ youth,
page, slave.

غَنَمٌ *coll.* sheep.

غَنِيَ *imp. a, c.* عَنْ to be
rich, not to have need
of.

II to sing.

IV to make rich.

• مُغَنٍّ singer.

غَابَ *med.* غِي to be absent.

غَارَ *med.* غِي *II, c.* مِنْ to
alter.

غَيْرٌ (§ 88 b with gen.)
other than, beside, ex-
cept; not.

مِنْ غَيْرٍ without.

غَيْرَةٌ indignation.

الْبُغَيْرَةُ al-Mugira, a
man's name.

غِيلَةٌ in an artful,
deceitful manner, un-
aware.

فَ *conj.* (§ 71 e; 104) then,
and, so.

فَتَحَ *imp. a* to open.

عَلَى to open to
anyone = to grant him
the victory over ...

مِفْتَاحٌ *pl.* مِفْتَاحٌ
key.

فَتَا *IV c. acc. pers. et في r.*
to explain.

فُتُوَّةٌ youthful behav-
iour, levity.

فَجَرَ *imp. u* to transgress,
commit disgraceful
deeds.

فَخَّرَ *III* to give oneself airs
toward anyone, boast.

فَرَّ *imp. i* to flee.

فَرَحَ *imp. a, c.* بَ r. to
rejoice, be glad.

فَرَسٌ horse, especially of
pure breed.

فِرَاسَةٌ cleverness, in-
sight. [ian.

فَارِسِي Persian, a Pers-

فَرَسَخٌ *pl.* فَرَاِسَخُ para-
sang, ab. four miles.

فَرَّغَ *imp. u, c.* مِّن to be emp-
ty, to get through with.

فَرَّقَ *imp. u, c.* بَيْنَ to sepa-
rate, distinguish.

V to be dispersed.

VIII to be divided,
split.

فِرْقَةٌ portion, party.

فَارُوقٌ maker of dis-
tinctions (Omar).

فَزِعَ *imp. a* to be fright-
ened, afraid, to fear.

فَسَادٌ evil deed.

فَسَقَ *imp. u* to commit
unlawful acts.

فَسِقٌ *inf.* evil, im-
moral conduct, trans-
gression.

فَشَا *IV* to reveal, divulge,
spread.

فَضَّةٌ silver.

فَضَحَ *imp. a, c.* مِّن to put
to shame before anyone.

فَضَلَ *VIII c.* بَ r. to wrap a
garment around oneself.

فَضْلٌ liberality.

فَعَلَ *imp. a* to do.

فَعْلٌ *pl.* أَفْعَالٌ deed,

action, manner of acting.

فَقَدَ *V* to miss, to ask, seek after anyone.

فَكَّ *VII c. مِنْ* to free oneself of, get rid of.

فَاكِهَةٌ *pl. فَوَاكِهُ* tree-fruit.

فَلَّ *imp. u* to make dull, blunt, to defeat, confound (?).

فُلَانٌ such and such a one.

فَهِمَ *V* to understand; to endeavour to understand, comprehend.

فَوْرُهُ, فَوْرٌ *at once.*

فُوّه (§ 65 o) mouth.

فِي *præp.* in, at, with, among; in comparison with.

قَبْرٌ grave.

قَبِلَ *imp. a* to accept.

IV to come towards, to come, come along; to begin.

X to be opposite to.

قَبْلَ *præp.* before, ere.

قَبْلَ opposing, power of resistance.

قَبْلَ *præp.* in presence of.

قَبُولٌ *inf. I* acceptance.

أَقْبِيَّةٌ *pl. قَبَائٍ* man's coat, wide garment.

قَتَلَ *imp. u* to kill.

III c. acc., to combat anyone, to fight.

قَتْلٌ *inf.* killing, execution.

قَتِيلٌ killed.

قُحَاةٌ a man's name.

قَدْ § 73 *e part.*

قَدَرَ *imp. i, c. عَلَى r.* to be able; to have power to do a thing.

II to apportion to anyone a fixed measure, esp. of talents.

IV c. عَلَى to make more powerful than...

قُدْرَةٌ might, omnipotence.

مِقْدَار measure, due.

مَقْدَس sanctuary.

بَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسِ (or

الْبَيْتُ = بَيْتُ الْمُقَدَّسِ

الْمُقَدَّسُ, the holy house) sanctuary, temple in Jerusalem, Jerusalem.

قَدِمَ *imp. a, c.* عَلَى to advance, arrive, come.

V to precede, to advance towards.

قَدَمٌ foot.

قَدِيمٌ *pl.* قَدَمَاءُ old, ancient, former.

قَرَّرَ *IV* to establish, confirm.

c. ر. ب. to confess.

X to stand, be established.

قَارُورَةٌ *pl.* قَوَارِيرُ glass vessel.

قَرَأَ *imp. a* to read, be able to read.

قَرُبَ *imp. u, c.* مِنْ to be near, approach.

II (denominative) to offer (a sacrifice).

قَرَبَةٌ water-skin (usually made out of a goat's skin).

قَرَابِينَ *pl.* قُرْبَانٌ sacrifice.

قَرِيبٌ *c.* مِنْ near.

قَرَابَةٌ relations.

قُرَيْشٌ the tribe of Kuraish, Kuraishites.

قُرْطٌ *pl.* أَقْرَاطٌ ear-ring.

قَرْيَةٌ *pl.* قُرَى village.

قسم *IV* to swear.

قِصَّةٌ *pl.* قِصَصٌ story, tale.

قَصَّابٌ butcher, executioner.

قَصَدَ *imp. i, c. acc.* to make for, go towards.

قَصُرَ to be short.

VI to make oneself short, contract oneself.

تَقَاصَرَتْ نَفْسُهُ to seem mean to oneself.

قَصْرٌ *pl.* قُصُورٌ palace, castle, fortress.

قَصْعَةٌ plate, dish.

قَضَّ *VII* to drop down, dart down (of a bird).

قَضَى *imp. i* to judge, to

sit in judgment; to execute.

VII to be finished, be at an end.

قَاضٍ judge.

قَطَعَ *imp. a* to cut through; to decide, determine; to pass, pass through.

تَعَدَّ *imp. u* to seat oneself, to sit.

c. l lie in wait for.

قَنَّا *VIII* to acquire, gain, buy.

قَادَ *med. و* to lead.

قَائِدٌ leader.

قَالَ *med. و* to say, tell; often = to ask.

c. l to call, name.

قَوْلٌ speech.

قَامَ *med. و* to stand up, to get up, to rise.

IV to establish, maintain; to accomplish,

execute; to place one-
self, stand, stay, re-
main.

قَوْمٌ *coll.* people, re-
lations.

قِيَمَةٌ *value.*

قِيَامٌ being awake; to
perform one's devotions.

مَقَامٌ place.

قَبْطَرٌ to tie up, bind
(a water-skin); to be
assembled.

قَوِيَ to be strong.

II to make strong.

قَوِيٌّ (*c. عَلَى*) strong,
powerful.

قَاءَ *med.* ي *V* to
vomit.

قَيْلٌ chieftain, king (in
Yemen).

لَنْ (§ 70; 94 b prop. subst.)
similitude, measure,
like, as.

كَأَنَّ (it is) as if...

كَبَّرَ *V* to magnify one-
self, be proud.

كَبِيرٌ *elat.* أَكْبَرُ great,
old.

كَتَبَ *imp. u* to write, be
able to write.

كَتَبَ مَعَهُمْ كِتَابًا he
wrote a letter and sent
it by them.

كِتَابٌ document,
letter, book.

كَتَفٌ, كَتِفٌ shoulder.

كَثُرَ to be much, abundant.

III to desire much
of anything, to seek to
surpass anyone.

كَثِيرٌ *elat.* أَكْثَرُ much
(often used as a sub-
stantive in apposition).

كَذَا so, thus.

كَذَبَ *imp. i* to lie, tell lies.

كُرْدُوش *coll.* division,
squadron.

كُرَيْز *Kuraiz*, man's name.

كُرْسِي seat, chair,
throne.

كَرَم *IV c. acc. pers. et* ب
r. to honour, present
with.

كَرَم *inf.* liberality,
generosity.

كَرِيم noble.

كَرِهَ *imp. a* not to like,
to rather not do a
thing.

كَشَفَ *imp. i, c.* عَنْ to
uncover, lay bare.

VII to be uncovered,
taken away.

كَعْبُ *Ka'b*, name of a man.

كُفُو equal, of equal birth,
rank.

كَفَرَ *imp. u* to be ungrateful,
to deny.

كُفْر unbelief.

كَفَى *imp. i, c. acc. pers. et*
r. to do a thing in
someone's place.

كُلُّ *(v. § 85 b)* totality,
before a determ. noun,
all; bef. indet. every.

مُكَلَّل ornamental, set.

كَلْدَة *Kalada*, name of
a man.

كِلْس lime.

دُو الْكَلَاعِ *Dū-lkalā*, n. of
a South Arabian prince.

كَلِم *II c. acc. pers.* to
talk with anyone.

V to speak, talk.

كَلَام speech, talk.

كَمَا (ما + ك) as, like as.

كَمَال perfection, com-
pleteness.

كُنَاسَة dust-heap; name of
a part of Kufa.

كُنْ quantity.

كَانَ *imp. u* to give a name of honour to, see the foll. line.

كُنْيَا name of honour, title, formed of the name of a son, with prefixed "father" or "mother".

كُوَّة window.

الْكُوفَة al-Kūfa, town near the site of ancient Babylon.

كَانَ *med. و* (§ 81; 97) to exist, be.

c. acc. to be something.

The perfect has often the force of the present.

كَانَ *c. ل* circumlocution for "to have".

كَيْفَ how?

لَ (§ 70 g; 95 not.) *part.* of asseveration.

لِ *præp.* (§ 70 h; 87) for;

indicates the dative; because of, on account of (end, motive); in stating dates, e. g. لَيْلَةٍ بَقِيَتْ مِنْ رَجَبٍ one night remaining of (the month) Ragab.

لِ *conj. c. subj.* (§ 75)

that, in order that.

لِآنَ (§ 95) because.

لَا not, with the jussive prohibitive § 76 b; with the perfect § 73 d.

بِلَا *præp. c. g.* without.

مَلَائِكَةٌ *pl.* ملائكة angel.

لَوْلُو Lu'lu'a, a man's name (pearl).

لَبِثَ *imp. a* to remain, tarry.

لَبَسَ *imp. a, c. acc. to*
put on (of dress).

IV c. 2 acc. to clothe.

لِبْسٌ clothing, dress.

لِبَاسٌ *id.*

مَلْبَسٌ *id.*

لَبْنٌ *coll., nom. unit.* لَبْنَةٌ
bricks.

لُجَّةٌ sea, lake.

أَلْجُونُ village in Pal-
estine, Legio.

لِسَانٌ tongue.

لَصِقَ *VIII c. ب* to be
attached to, cleave to.

لَطِيفٌ kind.

لَفَتَ *VIII* to turn round.

لَبَّ *II c. acc. pers. et*
to give a nickname,
surname to.

لَقَبٌ nickname.

لَقِيَ *imp. a* to meet.

IV c. acc. et أَلَّ to
throw, hand over to.

V to come forth to
meet, to meet.

X to throw oneself
down, to lie.

لَمْ (§ 76 c) not.

لَمَّا *conj.* after, when.

لَوْ *part.* if, introduces
an improbable condi-
tion. [blame.

لَامَ *med. و* to reproach,

لَانَ *med. و II* to colour,
variegate.

لَوْنٌ *pl.* أَلْوَانٌ colour,
kind, species.

لَيْسَ (§ 42; 81; 93 d) not
to be, not to exist.

لَيْسَ لَكَ it is not for
thee, thou must not.

لَيْفٌ fibre of the date-
palm.

لَيْلٌ *pl.* لَيَالٍ (§ 65 p)

night.

مِنَ اللَّيْلِ in the same
night.

مَا *pron.* what? that which;
something which.

مَا *conj.* (§ 101) as
long as.

مَا not (vgl. § 93 d).

مِائَةٌ (§ 66) *pron.* *mi'atun*
hundred.

مِثْلٌ similitude, the same;
one like, as (cfr.
§ 94 b).

مَجُوسِيٌّ Magian, adherent
of the religion of Zoro-
aster.

مُجُونٌ carelessness, un-
concernedness.

مَدَّ *imp. u* to stretch out.

مُدَّ عَيْنَيْكَ turn thy
eyes.

IV c. acc. pers. et ب

r. to help one along
to with...aid with...

مَدِينَةٌ town, city.

مَدِينَةٌ = الْمَدِينَةُ
النَّبِيِّ Medina.

الْمَدَائِنُ al-Madā'in,
Ctesiphon on the Tigris.

مَرَّ *imp. u* to pass by.

IV to make pass by
(brandish).

مَرَّةٌ time.

مَرَّةٌ once.

مُرَّةٌ Murra, name of
a man and of a tribe.

مَرْأَةٌ woman.

مَرْجٌ *pl.* مَرْجٌ meadow.

مَرَدٌ *II* to make smooth.

مَرِضٌ *imp. a* to become sick.

مَرْمَرٌ marble.

مَرْوَانٌ Merwān, name of

a man, here of the
Omayyad Caliph, r.
683—685.

مِسْكٌ musk.

مَسَاءٌ *IV* to enter upon
the evening; to do any-
thing late.

مَسَاءٌ evening.

مَشَى *imp. i* to go, go on,
march.

مَضَى *imp. i* to go, go by,
go away, to have exist-
ed formerly.

مَطَرٌ rain, shower.

مَعَ *präp.* with, along with,
in spite of.

مَعَ ذَلِكَ in addition
to that.

مُعَيْطٌ Mu'ait, man's name.

مَكَّةٌ Mecca.

مَكْرٌ craft, artfulness.

مَكْسٌ market-tax.

مَكَّنَ *II c. acc. pers. et*
مِنْ *r.* to put in pos-
session of.

مَلَأَ *imp. a, c. acc. et* مِنْ
to fill.

مَلَأَ *coll.* aristocracy,
nobles.

مَلَقَ *V* to flatter, seek
to appease.

مَلَكَ *imp. i, c. acc.* to
rule, govern, reign.

II to make king.

مُلْكٌ rule, govern-
ment, empire, reign,
royalty, wealth.

مِلْكٌ property.

مَلِكٌ *pl.* مُلُوكٌ king.

مَلِكَةٌ queen.

عَبْدُ الْمَلِكِ 'Abdul-
melik, a man's name,
here of the Omayyad
Caliph, reign. 685—705.

مَمْلَكَة empire, kingdom.

مَنْ ex مِنْ et مَنْ (§ 5d).

مَنْ who? (§ 14); he who, one who, if anyone.

(§ 13; 99; 102).

مَنْ who can...me?

مِنْ *præp.* of (something of), belonging to; placed after a negative it increases its force (§ 93b); consisting of; from, away from (separation, starting-point); with the comparative "than"; through (transition).

مَنْع *imp. a* to restrain, hinder.

VIII to defend oneself; refuse, be reluctant.

مَاتَ *med. و* to die.

مَوْتٌ *inf.* death.

مُوسَى Moses.

مَالٌ *pl. أَمْوَالٌ* property, possessions.

مَاءٌ (§ 65 q) water.

مَيْدَانٌ open space.

مَازَ *med. ي* II c. يَبَيِّن to distinguish between.

مَالَ *med. ي* to decline, incline, strive towards.

مَنْبَرٌ pulpit.

مُنَابِّهٌ Munabbih, name of a man.

نُبْدَةٌ portion, choice piece.

نَبَأٌ account, report.

نَبِيٌّ *pl. أَنْبِيَاءٌ vel نَبِيَّونَ* prophet.

نُبُوَّةٌ prophecy, dignity of prophet.

نَجَّارٌ carpenter.

فَحْسٌ unclean, dirty.

رَجَسَ نَجَسَ *id.*

نَجْم *star.*

نَجَا *imp. u* to become free,
to free oneself, escape,
be saved.

نَحَرَ *imp. a* to cut the
throat, kill.

نَحْر *throat.*

نَحْنُ *pron. we.*

نَحَا *V* to go aside, to re-
tire.

نَحْو *direction.*

نَحْوُ *præp. towards, in*
the direction of.

نَدِيمٌ *pl. نُدَمَاءُ* drink-
ing-companion.

نَدَا *III* to call out.

c. acc. to call to.

الْمُنْدِرُ *al-Mundir, name*
of a man.

نَزَعَ *imp. i* to remove, ex-
tract.

VIII to depart.

نَزَلَ *imp. i* to alight, dis-
mount, to encamp near
(عَلَى), to settle.

نَزُولٌ *inf.* alighting,
encamping, settling.

مَنْزِلٌ *pl. مَنَازِلُ* dwel-
ling, place of resi-
dence; station.

نَسَبٌ *descent, gene-*
alogy.

نُسخةٌ *copy, transcript,*
list.

نَسْرٌ *vulture.*

نَسَكَ *imp. u* to be pious,
to perform one's re-
ligious duties con-
scientiously.

نُسْكٌ *religiousness.*

مَناسِكٌ *pl. مَناسِكُ* cer-
emony during the pil-
grimage.

نِسَاءٌ (§ 65 f) *women.*

نَشَدَ *III c. 2 acc.* to adjure, call upon.

نَصَبَ *imp. u* to set up, erect, fix.

نَصْرَ *Nasr*, man's name.

أَنْصَارَ *pl.* "Helpers" of Muhammed in Medina.

نَاصِيَةً *pl.* نَوَاصِي forelock.

مِنْطَقَةً *pl.* مَنَاطِقُ girdle.

نَظَرَ *imp. u* to see, look, behold.

إِلَى *c.* to look at, gaze at.

نَظَرَ *inf.* seeing, looking at.

مَنْظَرَ look, view, aspect, appearance.

نَعَمْ *part.* yes, certainly.

نَفْسَ *fem., pl.* أَنْفُسَ soul, self (§ 11 e).

مَنْفَعَةً *pl.* مَنَافِعُ use, advantage, useful qualities, acquirements.

نَفَقَ *IV* to spend.

نُفَيْلَ Nufail, man's name.

نَقَرَ *imp. u* to pick, pierce.

نَقَّاشَ engraver, painter.

نَقَصَ *imp. u* to take away, diminish.

نَقَمَ *imp. i* to reproach anyone (*c. مِنْ*) with.

نَكَحَ *imp. i* to marry.
III to marry.

X id., wish to marry.

نَكَرَ *II* to disguise, make so as not to be recognized.

IV to find strange, deny; *c. acc. r. et عَلَى pers.* to be displeased with anyone for.

نَهَارَ day.

نَهَا *VIII* to arrive at, to come to an end.

نَهَايَةً extremity, utmost.

نِهَآوَنَدَ Nehāwend, town

in North-west Persia.

نُوبَةٌ *a body of troupes which takes turns in standing guard.*

نَارٌ *fem. hell-fire.*

نُورٌ *light.*

نَوْعٌ *pl. أَنْوَاعٌ kind, species, variety.*

نَاقَةٌ *female camel.*

نَامٌ *med. و, imp. a to lay oneself down, to go to sleep, to sleep.*

هَبَطَ *imp. u et i to dart down (of a bird).*

هَجْرَةٌ *flight.*

الْهَجْرَةُ *Muhammed's flight from Mecca to Medina.*

مُهَاجِرٌ *companion of Muhammed in the flight.*

هَجَمَ *imp. i, c. عَلَى to rush, hurl oneself upon.*

هُدًى *hoopoe.*

هَدَى *to lead the right way.*

VIII *to follow the right path.*

هُدًى *true, right guidance.*

هَدِيَّةٌ *pl. هَدَايَا gift, present.*

هَذَا, *fem. هَذِهِ (§ 12 b) this.*

أَبُو هُرَيْرَةَ *Abū Huraira, name of a companion of Muhammed.*

هَرَبٌ *inf. fleeing, flight.*

هَشَامٌ *Hishām, man's name.*

هَلْ *part. interrog.*

هَمَّ *imp. u to intend doing a thing.*

هَمٌّ *inf. care.*

هَوَامٌّ *pl. هَوَامَّةٌ reptile.*

هَمْدَان Hamdān, district
in Southern Arabia.

هُنَيْدَة Hunaida, name of
a castle in Southern
Arabia.

هَهْنَا *adv.* here, in this
place.

هُوَ *pron.* he.

هَار *med.* و VII to fall in.

هَال *med.* و I et II to fright-
en, terrify.

هَانَ *med.* و to be light, easy.

هَوَاءٌ air, atmosphere.

هِيَ *pron.* III *fem.* she.

هَيْبَة an inspiring with
fear and awe, ma-
jesty.

وَ *conj.* and, also, even.
in an oath with
the genitive: وَاللَّهِ by
God!

وَتَقَّ *imp. i, c.* بَ *pers.* to
place confidence in.

وَجَبَ *imp. i* to be necessary.
IV to appoint, fix.

وَجَدَ *imp. i* to find.

وَجَّهَ V to take the direc-
tion of, to go towards.

وَجْهٌ *pl.* وُجُوهُ face,
presence.

وَاحِدٌ one.

وَحُوشٌ *pl.* وَحْشٌ wild
animal.

وَدَعَ *imp.* يَدَعُ to place, let.

وَادٍ valley, water-course.

وَادِي الْقُرَى Wādī al-
Kurā, name of a valley
in North Arabia.

وَرَدَ *imp. i* to descend, go
down.

عَلَى *c.* to come to any-
one.

وَرَّآءَ *præp.* behind.

مِنْ وَرَّآءَ *id.*

وَزِيرٌ *pl.* وَزَرَآءُ *vezier.*

وَسِخَ to be dirty.

وَسَعَ *IV* to put anyone into a comfortable position; to procure riches for.

وَاسِعٌ wide, ample.

وَشَى striped cloth.

وَصَفَ *imp. i* to describe, to state, declare.

وَصَفَاءُ *pl.* وَصِيفٌ slave (who is fit for anything).

وَصَائِفٌ *pl.* وَصِيفَةٌ

• slave-girl (who is fit for anything).

وَصَلَ *imp. i* to unite; to arrive, get to.

وَصَى *IV c. acc. pers.* to

give good advice, esp. on a death-bed.

X c. بَ et خَيْرًا =

إِسْتِيصَاءٌ خَيْرًا (§ 80)

to have anyone recommended to one.

وَضَأَ *V* to perform the prescribed ablutions.

وَضَحَ *imp. i* to be clear, evident.

وَضَعَ *imp.* يَضَعُ to lay, place.

VI to be humble, appear to be humble.

مَوْضِعٌ place.

وَعَدَ *V c. acc. pers.* to threaten, to utter threats against anyone.

وَفَدَ *imp. i* to come to, to visit a prince.

وَفْدٌ *pl.* وَفُودٌ number of persons visiting a prince, deputation.

وَقَى *imp. i III c. acc.* to come, arrive at.

تَوَفَّاهُ اللَّهُ، تَوَفَّى ^r
God has taken him
(said of a Muslim) to
himself, has let him die
a blessed death. *pass.* to
die a blessed death.

وَفَاةٌ ^s death, blessed
death.

وَقْتُ ^s time.

وَقَارٌ ^s venerableness.

وَقَّاصٌ Wakḳāṣ, name of
a man.

وَقَعَ *imp.* يَقَعُ ^s to fall, dart
down.

وَقَفَ *imp. i* to stand still,
to stand.

وُقُوفٌ ^s *inf.* standing.

وَقَّى ^s *V c. acc.* to take
care, to be afraid
of.

وَكَلَ ^s *II* to appoint as
overseer.

وَلَدَ *imp. i* to bear (child).
X c. acc. to beget a son
of a woman.

وَلَدٌ ^s *pl.* أَوْلَادٌ ^s child,
son (*sg.* also *coll.*).

الْوَلِيدُ ^s al-Walīd, name
of a man (here of the
Omayyad Caliph, r.
705—715).

وَلَّى ^s *II* to turn one's back,
to turn back.

c. 2 acc. to appoint
anyone as governor
over . . .

V to turn one's back,
to turn away.

X c. عَلَى ^r to take
possession of.

وَالٍ ^s governor, rul-
er.

وَلِيَّ ^س *pl.* أَوْلِيَاءَ ^ع *elat.*

أَوَّلِيَّ ^ع *near, appropriate, fit; esp. near to God = saint.*

وَلَايَةً ^س *inf.* becoming governor, rule, reign.

وَهْبٌ ^س Wahb, man's name.

وَيْلٌ ^س calamity, woe.

يَا ^س *part. exclam.* (§ 61) O!

يَأْسَ ^س *imp. a, c.* مِنْ ^ن to despair of . . .

يَأْسٌ ^س *inf.* despairing, to have no hope.

يَتِيمٌ ^س orphan.

يَدٌ ^س *fem., pl.* أَيَدٍ ^ع (§ 65 r)

• hand, force, power.

يَسَرَ ^س to be easy.

يَسَارٌ ^س left, l. hand.

يَسِيرٌ ^س easy, little.

يَعْفُورٌ ^س proper name of a bird.

يَاقُوتٌ ^س Hyacinth, Chrysolite.

يَقِظُ ^س *imp. a* to be awake.

IV to wake.

X to have oneself waked, to awaken.

يَقِينٌ ^س *adj.* certain, sure, trustworthy.

يَمَنٌ ^س Yemen, South Arabia.

يَمَانٍ ^س (§ 49 *not.*) yemenitic.

يَمِينٌ ^س right, right hand.

عَنْ يَمِينٍ ^س on the right, right hand.

إِبْنُ مَيْمُونَةَ ^س Ibn Maimūna, man's name.

أَلْيَهُودُ ^س *coll.* Jews.

يَهُودِيٌّ ^س Jew.

يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ (§ 65 s) day,
day's journey; (*pl.*
reign). Determ. also
"this day".

يَوْمَ on the day
that . . . (§ 88 c).

يَوْمًا one day, once.

الْيَوْمَ (§ 84 a) to-day.

يَوْمَئِذٍ (e. *إِنَّ*) on
that day, then.

B.

pl. = plural, cfr. § 63.

Aaron هَارُونُ.

Abraham اِبْرَاهِيْمُ.

abstinence زُهْدٌ.

Abū Bekr al-Rabbānī أَبُو بَكْرٍ الرَّبَّانِيّ.

Abū Dulāma أَبُو دُلَامَةَ.

abundant see much.

accept (to) قَبِلَ *imp. a.*

acquire (to cause to) كَسَبَ

IV with two accus.

act well (to) حَسَنَ *IV.*

action فِعْلٌ.

address (to) خَطَبَ *III.*

affair أَمْرٌ.

after, after that *conj.* لَمَّا

§ 73 f.

after *prep.* خَلْفَ.

agreeable to *elat.* أَحَبَّ

with إِلَى.

aid (to) عَانَ *med. و IV*

with acc.

‘Alî عَلِيّ.

all كُلُّ *with determ. noun*

or suffix § 85 b.

alms (to give in) صَدَقَ

V with بَ.

along with *prep.* مَعَ.

already قَدْ § 73 e.

- alter (to) غَار *med.* *II.* *ي*
- although وَإِنْ § 102.
- among فِي.
- ample وَاسِعٌ *elat.* § 47 e.
- 'Amr عَمْرُو § 65 rem.
- and وَ.
- angel مَلَكٌ *pl.* § 63, 31.
- anger غَضَبٌ.
- animal (domestic) بَهِيمَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 26.
- another than غَيْرٌ *with following gen.*
- answer (to give) to جَاب *X med.* *و* *with ل.*
- antidote دِرْيَاقٌ.
- Antioch أَنْطَاكِيَّةٌ.
- any مِنْ (*prep.*).
- apostatize رَدَّ *VIII.*
- apostle رَسُولٌ.
- appear (to) مَثَلَ.
- appearance ظُهُورٌ.
- apply oneself to (to) عَطَا *FI with acc.*
- approach (to) قَرَّبَ *imp. u.* *with مِنْ.*
- arise (to, in the morning) *صَبَحَ II.*
- as to أَمَّا *with nom. and ف* *in the apodosis.*
- Asad أَسَدٌ.
- ashamed (to be) حَيَّ *X* § 41 c.
- ask (to) قَالَ *med.* *و* *with ل.* — to ask something of سَأَلَ *imp. a.* *with two acc.* § 36 b.
- ass حِمَارٌ.
- assemble (to) جَمَعَ *imp. a.*
- assert (to) زَعَمَ *imp. u.*
- astrologer مُنْجِمٌ.
- at *prep.* عِنْدَ.
- Bagdad بُغْدَادُ.
- baggage مَتَاعٌ.

- he, exist (to) **كَانَ** *med.* و. beginning **رَأْسٌ** ^s.
 — not to be **لَيْسَ** § 42. believe (to) **امِنَ** *IV*; —
 beard **لَحِيَّةٌ** ^s *pl.* § 63, 3, believer *id. part. act.*
 § 40 c, rem. b. belly **بَطْنٌ** ^s.
 beardless **أَمْرُدٌ** ^s *pl.* § 63, 1. beseech of (to) **طَلَبَ** *III*
 beat (to) **ضَرَبَ** *imp. i, inf.* with *acc. of person and*
ضَرَبَ. *b of thing.*
 beauty **حُسْنٌ** ^s. — beauties best *elat. of good.*
مَحَاسِنُ. better *elat. of good.*
 beautiful **حَسَنٌ** ^s *fem.* **نَعَةٌ** ^s; between **بَيْنَ** ^s.
elat. § 47 e. — to find beverage **مَشْرَبٌ** ^s *pl.* § 63, 29.
 to be beautiful **حَسَنٌ** *X.* birds *coll.* **طَيْرٌ** ^s.
 because **لِأَنَّ** ^s § 95 a. birth **مَوْلِدٌ** ^s.
 Bedouin **أَعْرَابِيٌّ** ^s. black **أَسْوَدٌ** ^s *fem.* § 51 c.
 before (of place) = be- bless (to) **صَلَا** *II*.
 tween the two hands body **جَسَدٌ** ^s *pl.* § 63, 19;
 of (dual stat. constr.). **بَدَنٌ** ^s (nr. 67).
 beg of (to) **سَأَلَ** ^s *imp. a,* book **كِتَابٌ** ^s.
with acc. born (to be) **وُلِدَ** *V*.
 beggar *part. act. of* **سَأَلَ** ^s. bottom **غَيَابَةٌ** ^s.
 begin, begin with (to) **بَدَأَ** ^s *imp. a, with acc.* break (to) **كَسَرَ** ^s *imp. i.*

bring (to) جَاءَ بِ *med. ي.*

— to bring an action against one another

حكم *VI.* — to bring in

حضر *IV.* — to bring

into دخل *IV.* — to

bring out خرج *IV.* —

to bring upon أتى *IV*

with عَلَى.

brother أَخ *§ 65 a, c; pl.*

§ 63, 6; *pl.* when =

“friends” § 63, 23.

bury (to) دَفَنَ *imp. i, inf.*

دَفَنَ.

but فَ.

by, by means of بِ.

Byzantines (the) *coll.* أَلرُّومُ.

Caliph خَلِيفَة.

care هَمٌّ.

carry onwards (to) سَارَ

med. ي. with بِ.

case خَبَرٌ.

cast (to) طَرَحَ *imp. a.*

cease (to) زَالَ *med. و.* (for

زَوَلَ § 39 a, § 29).

certain one (a) بَعْضٌ *with*

pl. of follow. noun.

character خُلِقَ *pl. § 63,*

19.

characteristic عَلَامَة.

chastise (to) حَدَّ *imp. u.*

chastisement عَذَابٌ.

cheap (to become) رَخَصَ

imp. u.

chief رَئِيسٌ *pl. § 63, 22.*

choose (to) خَارَ *med. ي*

VIII.

chrysolite يَاقُوتٌ.

Christian نَصْرَانِي *pl. § 63,*

28.

claim (to) دَعَا *VIII § 24*

rem.

claim دَعَوَى.

cloak رَدَاءٌ.

clot of blood ^sعَلَقَةٌ.

clothe (to) كَسَا *imp. u.*

city ^sمَدِينَةٌ.

cognizant of عَلِيمٌ ^sبِ.

combat (to) قَتَلَ *III.*

combined (to be) جَمَعَ *VIII.*

come (to) أَتَى ^ف*imp. i.* —

to come to one's know-

ledge (concerning) بَلَغَ

imp. u, with acc. (and

عَنْ). — to come in

upon دَخَلَ *imp. u, with*

عَلَى. — to come out

from خَرَجَ *imp. u, with*

مِنْ.

command (to) أَمَرَ ^ف*imp. u.*

— to command anyone

to do a thing, *id. with*

acc. and أَنْ with the

subj. — to command

anything to be given

to anyone, *id. with لَ*

of pers. and بِ of thing.

— to command any

thing to be done, *id.*

with بِ and infin.

command أَمَرَ ^ف.

companion صَاحِبٌ ^s *pl.*

§ 63, 19.

compassionate رَحِيمٌ ^s.

concerning فِي.

confide in (to) أَمِنَ ^ف *VIII.*

conquering *part. act. of*

قَهَرَ.

consider as (to) ظَنَّ ^ف *imp.*

u, with acc.

consumed (to be) حَرَقَ

VIII.

contain (to) جَبَعَ *imp. a.*

content (to be) رَضِيَ ^ف *imp.*

a. — to be content with,

id. with بِ.

contentment قَنَاعَةٌ ^s.

- continence ^سفُروج (pl. of ^سفَرَج).
 continue (to) دَامَ *med.* و.
 contradict (to) خلف *III.*
 converse (to) حدث *V.* —
 to converse about, id. ^ببِ.
 core ^سسَوَاد.
 counsel (to ask) شار *med.* و *X.*
 country ^سبَلَد *pl.* § 63, 10.
 courage ^سشَجَاعَة.
 cover up (to) سَتَرَ *imp. u.*
 covetousness ^سحِرْص.
 cradle ^سمَهْد.
 crazy *part. pass. of* جَنَّ ^سنَ.
 fem. ^سنَ.
 creation ^سخَلْق.
 crucify (to) صَلَبَ *imp. i.*
 cultivated *part. act. of* ^سعَمَرَ *fem.* ^سعَ.
 cure ^سشِفَاء.
 cut (to) قَطَعَ *imp. a.* —
 to cut open شَقَّ *imp. u.*
 al-Dahhāk ^سالْغَحَّاق.
 Damascus ^سدِمَشْق.
 daughter ^سبِنْت.
 day ^سيَوْم *pl.* أَيَّام § 63, 19.
 — one day ^سيَوْمًا. —
 to-day ^سالْيَوْم.
 day-time ^سنَهَار.
 dead ^سمَيِّت.
 death ^سمَوْت.
 deceive (to) خَدَعَ *imp. a.*
 decline (to) منع *VIII.*
 decree (to) قَضَى *imp. i.*
 demand (to) a thing سَأَلَ ^سعَنْ § 36 b.
imp. a, with ^سعَنْ § 36 b.
 depend on (to) وكل *V, with* ^سعَلَى.
 desert ^سفَيْفَاء *pl.* § 63, 27,
 § 64 a.

- desirous of (to be) شَاقَّ
med. و VIII, with عَلَى.
 detriment نَقْصٌ.
 devoted to (to be) هَمَكَ
VIII with فِي.
 devotee *part. act. of* عَبْد
V.
 die (to) مَاتَ *med. و.*
 difficult عَسِيرٌ.
 disagree (to) خَلَفَ *VIII.*
 disease دَاءٌ.
 disgraceful قَبِيحٌ.
 dish طَعَامٌ.
 dislike (to) كَرِهَ *imp. a.*
 disobedient *part. act. of* عَصَى.
 dissolve (to) ذَابَ *med. و.*
 distance مَسَافَةٌ.
 distinguish (to) خَصَّ
imp. u.
 do (to) عَمِلَ *imp. a; فَعَلَ*
imp. a (no. 139). — to
 do according to عَمِلَ
with بِ.
 dog كَلْبٌ; hunting-dog
 كَلْبٌ صَيْدٌ.
 door بَابٌ.
 drachma دِرْهَمٌ.
 draw forth (to) بَرَزَ *IV.*
 dread (to) خَشِيَ *imp. a.*
 dress مَلَبَسٌ *pl. § 63, 29.*
 drink (to) شَرَبَ *imp. a.*
 drunk, drunken سَكْرَانٌ.
 dwelling دَارٌ.
 East مَشْرِقٌ.
 easy يَسِيرٌ.
 eat (to) أَكَلَ *imp. u; imperat.*
 § 36 b. — to give to
 eat of طَعِمَ *IV with acc.*
pers. and مِّنْ.
 education أَدَبٌ. — to show
 one's education أَدَبَ *V.*
 elder أَكْبَرُ *pl. § 63, 29.*

- elect (to) *صَفَّى* VIII.
 elegance *جَمَالٌ*.
 enamoured of (to be)
 عَشِقَ imp. a, with acc.
 enchanter *سَاحِرٌ*.
 encounter (to) *لَقِيَ* III.
 endurance *صَبْرٌ*.
 enemy *عَدُوٌّ*.
 enjoy oneself (to) *طَرِبَ* V.
 entail (to) *وَرِثَ* IV.
 enter (to) *دَخَلَ* imp. u.
 entertain (to) *قَرَى* imp. i,
 inf. *قَرَأَ*.
 entrance *مَدْخَلٌ*.
 entrust (to) anyone with
 وَدَعَ X with two accus.
 envious part. act. of *حَسَدٌ*.
 equal *سَوَاءٌ*.
 ere, conj. *قَبْلَ أَنْ* § 75.
 err (to) *غَلَطَ* inf. *غَلَطَ*.
 error *ضَلَالٌ*.
 escape (to) *فَجَّأَ* imp. u.
 escape *بَدَّ*.
 estate *ضَيْعَةٌ* pl. § 63, 10.
 eulogize (to) *مَدَحَ* imp. a;
 id. VIII (no. 134).
 evening (late) *عَشِيٌّ*.
 every *كُلٌّ* with indetermin.
 noun. § 85 b.
 evidence *بَيِّنَةٌ*.
 evil (to be) *سَاءَ* med. و.
 — to do evil id. IV. —
 evil-doer part. act. of
 id. IV.
 evil *سُوٌّ*.
 example *عِبْرَةٌ*.
 excellent *فَاضِلٌ* elat. § 47 e.
 except *إِلَّا* (= *إِنْ لَا*) § 98.
 — except that *إِلَّا أَنَّهُ*
 § 95 b.
 excepting *مَا خَلَا* with acc.
 excuse (to) *عَذَرَ* imp. i.
 excuse *عُذْرٌ*.

- exhort (to) وَعَظَ *imp. i*, § 38 a.
 exist (to) كَانَ *med. و*.
 exit مَخْرَجٌ.
 exterior عَلَانِيَةٌ.
 extract (to) خَرَجَ *X*.
 eye عَيْنٌ § 50.
 face وَجْهٌ.
 fast (to) صَامَ *med. و*.
 father أَبٌ § 65 a.
 fault عَيْبٌ *pl.* § 63, 12.
 favour نِعْمَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 3.
 fear (to) خَافَ *med. و imp. a*, § 39 a.
 feed (to) طَعَمَ *IV*.
 fight (to) with one another قَتَلَ *VI*.
 find (to) وَجَدَ *imp. i*, § 38 a.
 fire نَارٌ.
 first أَوَّلٌ.
 fit وَلِيٌّ *elat.* وَلِيٌّ.
 five خَمْسٌ §§ 66, 67 a.
 flare up (to) أَجَّ *V*.
 flight هَرَبٌ.
 flourishing (to make) عَمَرَ *imp. u*.
 fly (to) from فَرَّ *imp. i*, with مِّنْ.
 folk قَوْمٌ *pl.* § 63, 19; بَشَرٌ *coll.* (nr. 120).
 follow (to) تَبَعَ *imp. a*.
 fool *part. act. of* جَهْلٌ.
 for *prep.* لَ § 70 h; *conj.* فَاَنَّ § 71 c.
 forbid (to) a thing to any-one حَرَّمَ *imp. i*, with two *accus.*
 force (to) ضَرَّ *VIII.* § 24 rem.
 forelock نَاصِيَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 25, 64 a; § 40 b.
 forgive (to) غَفَرَ *imp. i*.
 forgiving غَفُورٌ.

forgiveness (to beg) غفر *X.*

form صُورَةٌ *pl.* § 63, 4.

four أَرْبَعٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

fourth رَابِعٌ.

friend صَدِيقٌ *pl.* § 63, 20;

intimate friend خَلِيلٌ.

friendly لَطِيفٌ.

from *prep.* مِنْ.

fruit ثَمَرَةٌ.

gain (to) كَسَبَ *V.*

game صَيْدٌ.

garment ثَوْبٌ *pl.* § 63, 10,

§ 39 e rem.

gate بَابٌ.

gate-keeper بَوَّابٌ.

gather up (to) لَقَطَ *VIII.*

get to (to) نَهَى *VIII with*

إِلَى. — to get through

قَطَعَ *imp. a.*

gift مَوْهَبٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.

girl جَارِيَةٌ.

give (to) عطا *IV with two*
acc. — to give way *inf.*

خَضَعُ

glance بَصَرَ *pl.* § 63, 19.

glorify (to) سَبَحَ *II.*

glorious فَاخِرٌ *elat.* § 47 e.

glory شَرَفٌ.

go round (to) دَارَ *med. و.*

— to go away ذَهَبَ

imp. a. — to go on

مَشَى *imp. i.* — to go

out خَرَجَ *imp. u.* — to

let go رَسَلَ *IV.*

goblet قَدَحٌ.

god إِلَهٌ; God اَللَّهُ, by God
وَاللَّهُ.

gold-piece دِينَارٌ *pl.* § 65 k.

good *noun and adj.* خَيْرٌ

elat. id. — to be good

حَسُنَ *imp. u.* — to

make good طَابَ *med.*

يَ *IV.*

government رِئَاسَةٌ^s or
 رِياسَةٌ^s.
 governor وَلِيٌّ^s.
 grandee مَلِكٌ^s pl. § 63, 12.
 grant (to) قَطَعَ IV with
 two accus.
 grateful (to be) شَكَرَ imp. u.
 great كَبِيرٌ^s. — to be, be-
 come great كَبُرَ imp. u.
 green رَطَبٌ^s.
 greeting سَلَامٌ^s.
 guard (to) صَانَ med. و;
 inf. صَوَّنَ^s.
 guest ضَيْفٌ^s.
 hand يَدٌ^s.
 al-Hārītُ الْحَارِثُ.
 Harûn al-Rashîd هَارُونُ
 الرَّشِيدِ.
 hate بُغْضٌ^s.
 have (to), is expressed by

the subject in the dative
 (with لِ) followed by the
 object in the nom. (as
 لَهُ مَالٌ^s he has money);
 occasionally a form of
 كَانَ to be stands before
 the subject (as كَانَ لَهُ^s
 he had money). —
 not to have either as in
 the last example, but
 with لَيْسَ (§ 42) instead
 of كَانَ (لَهُ مَالٌ)
 or لَا with following ob-
 ject (§ 81 b) and dative
 of subject (لَهُ).

he هُوَ § 11 a. — he who
 مِنْ § 13 b.
 head رَأْسٌ^s.
 hear (to) سَمِعَ imp. a, inf.
 سَمَاعٌ^s.
 heart قَلْبٌ^s.
 heaven سَمَاءٌ^s.

- heir *part. act. of* وَرِث *pl.*
 § 63, 7.
 hell-fire النَّارُ.
 help (to) نَصَرَ *imp. u.* —
 to demand help of عَان
med. و X with ب.
 Heraclius هِرَقْلُ.
 high عَلِيٌّ.
 hope for (to) رَجَا *imp. u,*
with acc.
 horse دَابَّةٌ.
 horsemen *coll.* خَيْلٌ.
 house بَيْتٌ.
 how كَيْفَ.
 however وَلَا كِنْ *with follow.*
verb.
 humble (to be) وَضَعَ *VI.*
 hungry *part. act. of* جَاعَ
med. و.
 hundred مِائَةٌ § 66, 67 c.
 hunt (to) صَادَ *med. ي.* —
 to go forth to hunt *id. V.*
 hunt, chase صَيْدٌ.
 hurry (to) عَجَلَ *II.*
 al-Husain الْحُسَيْنُ.
 hypocrisy رِيَاءٌ.
 hypocrite *part. act. of*
 نفق *III.*
 I أَنَا.
 ignorance جَهْلٌ.
 ignorant *part. act. of* جهل.
 idea مَعْنَى *pl.* § 63, 27,
 § 64 a.
 if إِنْ § 102; in *hypothe-*
tical clauses لَوْ *with the*
perf. — if anyone مَنْ
 § 102.
 illustrious جَلِيلٌ *elat.*
 § 47 e.
 imperfection *inf. of* نَفَاتٌ
med. و VI.
 in *prep.* فِي.
 incumbent on (to be) وَجَبَ
imp. i, with عَلَى § 38 a.

- indicate (to) دَلَّ *imp. u.*, *with* عَلَى.
- indication دَلِيلٌ.
- indigestion بَشَمٌ.
- inform (to) خَبَرَ *IV.*
- inhabit (to) سَكَنَ *imp. u.*
- inhabitants أَهْلٌ.
- inquire concerning (to) فِي *X with* فَتَى.
- intelligent *part. act. of* عَقَلَ.
- interior سَرِيرَةٌ.
- interrupted (to be) قَطَعَ *VII.*
- into *prep.* فِي.
- invest (to) anyone with عَلَى *imp. a, with* خَلَعَ *of pers. and acc. of thing.*
- inviolability حُرْمَةٌ.
- invite to (to) دَعَا *imp. u.*, *with* إِلَى.
- Islam اِلْسْلَامٌ.
- Israel اِسْرَائِيلُ.
- Jalāl al-dīn جَلَالُ الدِّينِ.
- Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ.
- Jews (the) *coll.* اَلْيَهُودُ.
- join (to) لَحِقَ *imp. a, with* بَ.
- Jonah يُونُسُ.
- Joseph يُوسُفُ.
- joy سُرُورٌ.
- justice عَدْلٌ.
- keep from (to) مَنَعَ *imp. a,* *with acc. and* مِنْ.
- keep intact (to) بَقِيَ *IV.*
- kill (to) قَتَلَ *imp. u.*
- kindle (to) وَقَدَّ *imp. i.*
- king مَلِكٌ.
- kingdom مَمْلَكَةٌ.
- kiss (to) قَبَلَ *II.*
- knock (to) at the door of

- عَلَى *imp. u, with* دَقَّ *of pers. and acc. of door.*
 know (to) عَرَفَ *imp. a*; دَرَى *imp. i (nr. 132);*
imp. i (nr. 73).
 knowing *part. act. of* عَلِمَ *;*
elat. § 47 e.
 Koran الْقُرْآنُ.
 lack عَدَمٌ.
 lamp سِرَاجٌ.
 laugh (to) ضَحِكَ *imp. a. —*
 to laugh at id. *with* مِنْ.
 — to make laugh id.
 IV.
 law-code شَرِيعَةٌ.
 lawful (to be) حَلَّ *imp. i.*
 lead (to) قَادَ *med. و.*
 learn (to) عَلِمَ V.
 learned عَلِيمٌ *pl. § 63, 22.*
 learning عِلْمٌ.
 leave, leave off (to) تَرَكَ *imp. u.*
 let (to) وَدَعَ *imp. a § 38 a.*
 liar (to declare anyone to
 be a) كَذَبَ II.
 liberal سَخِيٌّ.
 lie, tell a lie (to) كَذَبَ
imp. i; inf. كِذْبٌ.
 life (the future, next world)
 الْآخِرَةُ.
 life-time حَيَاةٌ.
 light (to) سَرَجَ IV. — to
 give light to ضَاءَ *med.*
 و IV, *with* ل.
 like كَنَ *with gen. — like*
 as كَمَا.
 likeness مَثَلٌ.
 little قَلِيلٌ.
 live (to) عَاشَ *med. ي.*
 living حَيٌّ.
 long طَوِيلٌ.

- long for (to) شاق *med.* , manifest *part. act.* بان
VIII, with عَلَى *med.* *IV.*
- look at (to) نَظَرَ *imp. u.* mankind *coll.* النَّاسُ
with إِلَى.—to look down *وَضَعَ* manner
طريق IV.—to look into marry (to) *act.* زاج *med.*
طلع VIII, with فِي § 24, *II.—neut. id. V.*
rem.
- lord رَبٌّ. Mary مَرِيَمُ.
- love, fall in love with (to) meat لَحْمٌ.
- حَبَّ IV, with acc.* Mecca مَكَّةُ.
- love حُبٌّ. medicine طِبٌّ.
- loving *inf.* حَبَّيَّةٌ. meet (to) لَقِيَ *imp. a.*
- lower (to) غَضَّ *imp. u.* mention (to) ذَكَرَ *imp. u.*
- lust رَغْبَةٌ.—lusts شَهَوَاتٌ. mien مَنَظَرٌ.
- make, make to be (to) جَعَلَ mighty عَظِيمٌ *elat. § 47 e.*
- imp. a., (with two accus.).* mill طَاحُونَةٌ.
- to make (poetry) قَالَ mindful of (to be) ذَكَرَ *imp.*
med. *و.* *u, with acc.*
- malady سَقَامٌ. miracle مُعْجَزَةٌ.
- al-Ma'mûn الْمَأْمُونُ. misfortune مُصِيبَةٌ *pl.*
- man رَجُلٌ *pl. § 63, 10; مَرءٍ* § 63, 26.
- (*nrs. 2, 43, 102.*) modesty حَيَاءٌ.
- moment (this) السَّاعَةُ.

- money مَالٌ. — piece of name اِسْمٌ.
- money دِرْهَمٌ *pl.* § 63, 29. narrow ضَيْقٌ (= ضَيِّقٌ)
- month شَهْرٌ. *elat.* § 47 e.
- morning (early) بَكْرَةٌ. nature طَبْعٌ *pl.* § 63, 10.
- morrow, to-morrow غَدٌ. near (to place) قَرَبٌ *II.*
- Moses مُوسَى. needle اِبْرَةٌ.
- mosque مَسْجِدٌ. neighbour جَارٌ.
- most *elat. of* much. niggardly بَخِيلٌ. — to de-
- mountain جَبَلٌ. clare anyone to be n.
- much كَثِيرٌ *elat.* § 47, e. — بَخِلٌ *II.*
- to be much, abundant niggardliness بَخْلٌ.
- much كَثَرٌ *imp. u.* — to make night لَيْلٌ.
- much كَثَرٌ *IV.* noble كَرِيمٌ. — nobles *coll.*
- al-Mugîra الْمُغِيرَةُ. مَلَأَ.
- Muḥammad مُحَمَّدٌ. not لَا.
- music سَمَاعٌ. now *conj.* فَ.
- Muslim (to become a) سَلِمٌ. nutriment قُوْتٌ.
- IV.* — Muslim *id. part.* O! يَا § 61.
- act.* obedient to (to be) قَنَتَ
- Muzâhim مُزَاهِمٌ. *imp. u, with* لِ.
- naked عُرْيَانٌ *fem.* سَاءَ. observe (to) عَبَرٌ *VIII.*

occasion as a consequence
(to) عَقِبَ *IV*, with two
accus.

Omar عُمَرُ.

on account of *prep.* لِ.

one as noun or adj. وَاحِدٌ
fem. مِائَةٌ; with pron.
suffix أَحَدٌ.

only إِنَّمَا.

onslaught بَأْسٌ.

open (to) فَتَحَ *imp. a; inf.*
فَتْحٌ.

opinion (to be of) رَأْيٌ
imp. a, § 41 b.

or أَوْ.

other آخَرُ.

overtake (to) دَرَكَ *IV*.

owner صَاحِبٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.

page, boy غُلَامٌ.

Paradise الْجَنَّةُ.

pardon (to) عَفَا *imp. u*,
with عَلَى.

pass on (to let) جاز *med.*
و *IV*.

pearls *coll.* لُؤْلُؤٌ.

pebble حَصَاةٌ.

people أَهْلٌ.

perhaps لَعَلَّ § 95 a.

perish (to) هَلَكَ *imp. i*;—
to cause to p. id. *IV*.

person (man) إِنْسَانٌ.

Pharao فِرْعَوْنُ.

physician طَبِيبٌ.

pick up (to) لَقَطَ *imp. u*.

piety دِيَانَةٌ.

place مَوْطِنٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.

place (to) وَضَعَ *imp. a*.
§ 38 a.

plants *coll.* نَبَاتٌ (*masc.*)

please (to) عَجِبَ *IV*.—
to be well pleased with

عَنِ *imp. a with* رَضِيَ.

pleasure لَذَّةٌ *pl.* § 53.

pliancy لِينٌ

poem, poetry شِعْرٌ *pl.* § 63,

19.

poet شَاعِرٌ

poison سَمٌ

polite scholar ظَرِيفٌ *pl.*

§ 63, 22.

poor فَاقِرٌ *pl.* § 63, 22.

possessor ذُوْ *fem.* ذَاتُ

poverty فَقْرٌ

power قُوَّةٌ

praise (to) حَمِدَ *imp. a.*

praise ذِكْرٌ

pray (to) صلا *II.*

prayer صَلَاةٌ (= صَلَوَةٌ

§ 39 a) *pl.* § 59.—direc-

tion of prayer قِبْلَةٌ.—

leader of prayer إِمَامٌ

preach to (to) خَطَبَ *imp.*

u, with acc.

precede (to) قَدَمَ *V.*

prepare (to) صَلَحَ *II.*

presence حُضْرَةٌ

present (gift) صَلََّةٌ

preserve (to) حَفِظَ *imp. a.*

pride كِبَرٌ

prince أَمِيرٌ *pl.* § 63, 22.

prison سِجْنٌ

promise وَعْدٌ

prophecy (gift of) نُبُوَّةٌ.—

to pretend to prophecy

نَبَأَ *V.*

prophet نَبِيٌّ *pl.* § 63, 20.

prostrate oneself (to) سَجَدَ

imp. u.

protect (to) حَرَسَ *imp. u, i.*

provide for (to) رَزَقَ *imp. u, i.*

with two accus.

punishment نُقُوبَةٌ

purify (to) طَهَرَ *II.*—to p.

oneself id. *V.*

purse صُرَّةٌ

pursue (to) **تَبَعَ** VIII.

put (to) **جَعَلَ** *imp. a.*—to

put off till **أَخَّرَ** II. *with* ل.

qualify (to) *inf.* **وَصَفَّ**.

raise, raise up (to) **رَفَعَ**

imp. a; inf. **رَفَعَ**.

Ramadhân **رَمَضَانُ**.

al-Rashîd **الرَّشِيدُ**.

reach (to) **دَرَكَ** IV.

read (to) **قَرَأَ** *imp. a.*

recede from (to) **بَعَدَ** *imp.*

a, with مِنْ.

recite (to) **قَرَأَ** *imp. a.*

reed-pen **قَلَمٌ**.

reflection *inf. of* **فَكَرَ** V.

refuse (to) **أَبَى** *imp. a.*—

to r. to do id. *with* أَنْ
and subj.

regret **نَدِمَ**.

relate (to) **حَكَى** *imp. i.*

related to **قَرِيبٌ** *with* مِنْ.

religion **دِينٌ**.

rely on (to) **وَكَلَ** VIII, *with*

عَلَى § 38 c.

repel (to) **رَدَّ** *imp. u.*

repent (to) **تَابَ** *med.* و.

repentance **نَدَامَةٌ**.

report **خَبَرَ**.

reproach (to) **لَامَ** *med.* و.

restore (to) **رَاحَ** *med.* و. IV.

restrain from (to) **كَفَّ** *imp.*

u, with acc. and عَنْ.—

to r. oneself from id.

with عَنْ.

resurrection **قِيَامَةٌ**.

return to (to) **رَجَعَ** *imp. i,*

with إِلَى.

right (due) **حَقٌّ**.

right, right hand **يَمِينٌ**.

rise in value (to) **غَلَا** *imp. u.*

roof **سَقْفٌ**.

routed (to be) **هَزَمَ** VII.

rule (to) سَاسَ *med.* و.

run races (to) سبق *VIII.*

saddle (of an ass) بَرَدَعَةٌ *s*

—saddle-girth حِزَامٌ *s*

safe (to be) سَلِمَ *imp. a.*

al-Saffâh السَّفَّاحُ

salt مِلْحٌ *s*

save (to) سلم *II.*

say (to) قَالَ *med.* و.—to

say of anyone id. with

عَنْ.—to s. to anyone
id. with لِ.

scatter (to) نَثَرَ *imp. u, i.*

sea بَحْرٌ *s*

second ثَانٍ *s*

secret سِرٌّ *pl. § 63, 19.*

security ضَمَانٌ *s*

see (to) رَأَى *imp. a, § 41 b.*

seedy *part. pass. of* خمر.

seek (to) طَلَبَ *imp. u.—*

to s. for oneself id. *V.*

seemly (to be) بغى *VII.*

seize (to) أَخَذَ *imp. u.*

self نَفْسٌ § 11 e.

send (to) رسل *IV.—to s.*

to id. with إِلَى.

serpent ثُعْبَانٌ *s*

servant (i. e. of God) عَبْدٌ *s*

pl. § 63, 10.

serve wine to (to) سَقَى *imp.*

i, with acc.

set about (to) صَارَ *med.* ي.

with imp. § 74 c. rem.

seventy سَبْعُونَ *s*

shadow ظِلٌّ *s*

shift (to) صَرَفَ *imp. i.*

ship سَفِينَةٌ *s*

shirt قَبِيضٌ *s*

shoulder كَتِفٌ *s*

sign آيَةٌ *pl. § 53.*

silent (to be) صَمِتَ *inf.*

sin خَطِيئَةٌ *s*

singing (art of) غِنَاءٌ *s*

- sit with (to) **جَلَسَ** *III, with acc.*
 size **قَامَة**.
 slave **مَبْلُوك** *pl. § 63, 30.*—
 slave-girl **جَارِيَة** *pl. § 63, 25, § 64 a.*
 sleep, go to sleep (to) **نَامَ**
med. و, imp. a; part. act. pl. § 63, 10; § 39 e, rem.
 small **صَغِير**.—to become
s. صَغِرَ imp. a.
 smoke **دُخَان**.
 snow **ثَلَج**.
 so *conj.* **فَ**.
 sober *part. act. of* **صَحَا**.
 Soçrates **سُقْرَاط**.
 solicitude **هَمَة**.
 son **ابْن** § 65 b (the sound plural with names of tribes).
 song **أَغْنِيَة** *pl. § 63, 27.*
 sorrow **حُزْن**.
 spare (to) **حَيَّ** *X, § 41 c.*
 speech **قَوْل**.
 spend (to) (*of time*) *inf.* **قَطَعَ**.
 spirit **رُوح**.
 staff **عَصَا**.
 stand (to) **قَامَ** *med. و; part. act. pl. § 63, 10, § 39 e, rem.*—to stand still
imp. i. **وَقَفَ**.
 star **نَجْم**.
 start off (to) **وَجَهَ** *V.*
 stay (to) **قَامَ** *med. و IV.*
 steal (to) **سَرَقَ** *imp. i.*
 stratagem **حِيلَة**.
 stream **سَيْدَل**.
 strength **حَوْل**.
 Šu'ba **شُعْبَة**.
 submissive (to be) **ذَلَّ** *V.*
 subsistence **رِزْق**.

sufficiency كِفَايَةٌ.

supplication دُعَاءٌ.

surely لَ (after إِنَّ).

tail ذَنْبٌ.

take (to) أَخَذَ *imp. u.*—

(of a city) فَتَحَ *imp. a.*

to t. away ذَهَبَ *imp. a.*,

with ب.—to t. hold of

أَخَذَ *imp. u.*, with ب.

talk to (to) كَلَّمَ *II*, with

acc.—to t. to one an-

other id. *V*.

talk كَلَامٌ.

tattle لَفْظٌ.

teach (to) عَلَّمَ *II*, with two

accus.

ten عَشْرٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

than مِنْ.

that *pron.* ذَلِكَ § 12 c.

that (in order that) لِي *with*

subj. § 75.

that *conj.* أَنْ (before a

verb); اَنَّ (before a noun

§ 95 a).

that which مَا.

then فَ.

thereupon ثُمَّ.

thief لِصٌّ *pl.* § 63, 12.

thing شَيْءٌ *pl.* § 63, 19.

think (to) ظَنَّ *imp. u.*, with

two *accus.*; *inf.* ظَنَّ.

third ثَالِثٌ § 68 a.

thirty ثَلَاثُونَ §§ 66, 67 b.

this هَذَا § 12 b.

Thora (the) التَّوْرَةُ.

those who مَنْ § 13 b.

thou أَنْتَ.

thought فِكْرٌ.

three ثَلَاثٌ §§ 66, 67 a.

through (by means of)

prep. بِ.

throw away (to) رَمَى *imp.*

i.—to throw down لَقِيَ

IV.

tidings, to give glad tidings to anyone of a thing بَشَّرَ II, with acc. of pers. and ب.

time زَمَانٌ.—(proper) time وَقْتُ.

tipsy نَشْوَانٌ.

title-page عُنْوَانٌ.

to (direction) prep. إِلَى;
(sign of the dative) لِ.

tongue لِسَانٌ pl. § 63, 18.

towards prep. إِلَى.

transgression ذَنْبٌ pl.
§ 63, 12.

transitory part.act. of فَنِيَ.

travel (to) سَارَ med. ي.

treasure خَزِينَةٌ.

tree شَجَرَةٌ.

tribe قَبِيلَةٌ pl. § 63, 26.

trick حِيلَةٌ.

trustworthiness اِمَانَةٌ.

truth صِدْقٌ.

turn (to) مَالَ med. ي.—

to turn from عَرَضَ VI,

with عَنْ.—to t. away

(act.) رَدَّ imp. u.—to t.

away from (neut.) وَلِيَ II,

with مِنْ.

twinkling لَحْظَةٌ.

‘Ubaid عُبَيْدٌ.

ugly قَبِيحٌ fem. سَاءَةٌ.

unbeliever part.act. cf كَفَرَ
pl. § 53.

uncover (to) كَشَفَ imp. i.

understanding عَقْلٌ.

unmindful of (to be) سَلَا

V, with عَنْ.

until conj. حَتَّى generally
with subj.

upon prep. فَوْقَ.

used to (he) كَانَ med. وَ
with follow. imp. § 74 c.

- value ^سقِيَمَةٌ.
 vehemence ^سجِدَّةٌ.
 vehement ^سعَاصِفٌ.
 verily ^سإِنَّ §§ 95, 71 c.
 viand ^سمَطْعَمٌ *pl.* § 63, 29.
 violent ^سشَدِيدٌ.
 wade through (to) ^سخَاضَ
 med. و, with acc.
 want (to) ^سرَادَ *med. و IV.*
 want ^سحَاجَةٌ.
 war (holy) ^سفِعَالٌ *of*
 جهد *III.*
 Waraka ^سوَرَقَّةٌ.
 wash (to) ^سغَسَلَ *imp. i.*
 waste ^سغَامِرٌ *fem. سَة.*—to
 render waste ^سخَرَبَ *II.*
 water ^سمَاءٌ.
 well ^سجُبٌّ.
 West ^سمَغْرِبٌ.
 whale ^سحُوتٌ.
 what *rel. interr.* ^سمَا.
 when *rel. interr.* ^سمَتَى; *conj.*
 إِذَا § 101.
 where? ^سأَيْنَ.—wherefrom,
 whence ^سمِنْ أَيْنَ.
 which *relat.* ^سالَّذِي.
 whichever ^سأَيُّ § 13 c.
 while (a) ^سسَاعَةٌ.
 whilst *cfr.* § 100.
 who *rel.* ^سالَّذِي; *interr.* ^سمَنْ.
 whole ^سجَمِيعٌ.
 why? ^سلِمَ; why then? ^سلِمَاذَا.
 wick ^سدُبَالَةٌ.
 wickedness ^سشَرٌّ.
 will (to) ^سشَاءَ *med. ي.*
 wind ^سرِيحٌ § 50.
 wine ^سخَمْرٌ.
 wisdom ^سحِكْمَةٌ.
 wise ^سحَكِيمٌ *pl.* § 63, 22.
 wish (to) ^سرَادَ *med. و IV.*

- with *prep.* بِ. — with re- write to (to) كَتَبَ *imp. u,*
gard to *prep.* فِي. *with* إِلَى.
- without بِغَيْرِ (*with gen.*). . wrong (to, to do) ظَلَمَ *imp.*
woe to! وَيْلٌ لِّ. *i; inf.* ظَلَمَ.
- wolf ذئبٌ.
- woman امْرَأَةٌ, مَرَأَةٌ. — Yazîd يَزِيدُ.
- women نِسَاءٌ. ye أَنْتُمْ.
- wood عَوْدٌ. — piece of wood year سَنَةٌ.
- خشبةٌ.
- word كَلِمَةٌ. yes نَعَمْ.
- work عَمَلٌ *pl.* § 63, 19. young صَغِيرٌ *elat.* § 47 e,
- world (the, this) الدُّنْيَا. *pl.* § 63, 29.
- worst شَرٌّ. young man فَتًى *pl.* § 63, 23.
- youth غُلَامٌ.
- Zaid زَيْدٌ.

ERRATA.

Paradigmata.

3, 1 يَقْتُلَانِ.

6, Inf. III قَتَالُ.

7, Part. IX مُقْتَلٌ.

8, II fem. Pl. قَرَرْتُنِ.

9, III fem. Sing. Imperf. Ind.

and II masc. تَفَرُّ.

15, Perf. Act. IV أَقَادَ.

20, Inf. IV إِقْضَاءٌ.

H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung in Berlin S.W.
Keilinschriftliche Bibliothek

Sammlung

von

assyrischen und babylonischen Texten

in

Umschrift und Übersetzung.

In Verbindung mit

Dr. L. Abel, Dr. C. Bezold, Dr. P. Jensen,

Dr. F. E. Peiser, Dr. H. Winckler

herausgegeben

von

Eberhard Schrader.

- I Band. XVI, 218 S. gr. 8. Mit einer Karte M. 9.—.
II. „ VI, 292 S. gr. 8. „ „ „ M. 12.—.
III. „ 2. Hälfte, IV, 147 S. gr. 8. M. 6.—.

Das vorstehende Unternehmen ist dazu bestimmt, die seit einer Reihe von Jahren im Bereiche des alten Assyrien und Babylonien gemachten Inschriftenfunde in einer chronologisch und zugleich sachlich geordneten Sammlung in ihren wichtigsten Repräsentanten zu vereinigen und in transcribirtem Text mit gegenüber stehender deutscher Übersetzung vorzulegen. Wird die Wiedergabe des transcribirten Originaltextes den Anforderungen strenger Wissenschaft Genüge zu leisten bestrebt sein, so wird die beigefügte wortgetreue Übersetzung die für die Geschichte so hochwichtigen Inschriftenfunde auch den nicht assyriologisch vorgebildeten Lesern, in erster Linie Historikern und Theologen, aber auch Juristen und Alterthumsfreunden im weitesten Sinne des Worts zugänglich zu machen suchen. Durch sorgfältige literarische Nachweise und die Beifügung sachlicher und sprachlicher Erläuterungen in knaptester Form ist für die Orientirung des Lesers auf dem betreffenden Gebiete in entsprechender Weise gesorgt. Bezüglich der bei Auswahl, Transcription und Übersetzung im Einzelnen befolgten Grundsätze verweisen wir auf das Vorwort.

Das Zusammenwirken einer Reihe von fachmännischen Gelehrten, an deren Spitze **Prof. Dr. Eberh. Schrader** in Berlin steht, dürfte dem Werke eine dauernde Bedeutung sichern.

Von den bereits erschienenen Bänden der „Keilinschriftlichen Bibliothek“ umfasst Band I die historischen Texte des altassyrischen Reichs nebst chronologischen Beigaben; Band II bringt in Umschrift und Übersetzung, sowie mit den nöthigen einleitenden Bemerkungen und sonstigen Erläuterungen versehen, historische Texte des neuassyrischen Reichs nebst einem Anhang und chronologischen Beigaben; Band III wird in zwei Abtheilungen erscheinen, von denen die erste die altbabylonischen Inschriften, die zweite die des neubabylonischen Reichs enthalten wird. Die zunächst erscheinende erste Abtheilung des III. Bandes wird nachstehende **Inschriften** bringen:

Königsinschriften von Ur, Erech, Larsam, Nipur u. s. w.;

Inschriften Gudea's aus Tello;

Inschriften Königs Hammurabi von Babylon;

Inschrift Königs Agukakrimi;

Inschriften von Tell-el-Amarna;

Zwei Inschriften Königs Nebukadnezar's I.;

Steintafelinschrift vom Sonnentempel zu Sippar;

Inschriften Šamaš-sum-ukin's.

dazu: eine Karte der Entwicklung der babylonischen Theilherrschaften und des babylonischen Reichs.

Die ganze Sammlung ist auf vier, in jährlichen Zwischenräumen erscheinende Bände im Umfange von je ca. 15⁰ bis 20 Bogen bemessen; jedem Bande historischen Inhalts wird, soweit erforderlich, eine erläuternde Karte von Prof. H. Kiepert beigegeben sein.

Indem wir zur Subscription auf die

Keilinschriftliche Bibliothek

hiermit ergebenst einladen, bemerken wir, dass jede solide Buchhandlung in der Lage ist, die erschienenen beiden ersten Bände auf Verlangen zur Einsicht vorzulegen.

HEBREW GRAMMAR

with Reading book, Exercises, Literature and Vocabularies

by

Hermann L. Strack, D. D., Ph. D.

Professor of Theology in Berlin.

Translated from the German by Prof. Arch^d. R. S. Kennedy.

Second enlarged edition. 8. XVI. 264 p. cloth 5/.

deutsche Ausgabe: Dritte neubearbeitete Auflage. M. 3.60.

édition française traduite par A. F. Baumgartner. Édition revue et augmentée par l'auteur. 8. XII. 250 p. sewed 3/6d.

Opinions and Reviews.

Le Muséon, Janvier 1886: La grammaire hébraïque de Mr. Strack, spécialement dans la seconde édition, mérite d'être qualifiée d'excellente; elle donne ce qu'un livre de classe doit fournir pour mériter cette qualification... C'est surtout dans l'exposé du verbe que l'auteur témoigne d'une connaissance magistrale et d'une méthode scientifique, unie à un système pratique excellent...

Rev. Prof. Aiken (Princeton) in: *The Presbyterian Review*, July 1886. *This little book will be found useful even by advanced Hebrew scholars.*

The American 1886, No. 290: It is yet the best Hebrew Grammar for reaching purposes which has thus far appeared.

The Guardian 1886, Aug. 25: A work which has a high reputation in Germany. It is "the result of many years' experience" in practical teaching.

Rev. Prof. Kirkpatrick (Cambridge) in: *The Expositor*, June 1886: Prof. Strack's name is a guarantee of accurate and careful work.

Rev. Ch. H. H. Wright (Dublin) in: *Irish Ecclesiastical Gazette*, July 1886: A most valuable synopsis of Hebrew Grammar... *The syntax is peculiarly satisfactory.*

Prof. Will. Harper (Yale College) in: *Hebraica*, January 1886: In this work, Dr. Strack has given an indication of the Hebrew learning for which he is so well known, not only in Europe, but also in America. But more than this, he has indicated his ability as a practical teacher. *The book is fresh, vigorous, scientific.*

Prof. S. R. Driver (Oxford) in: *The Academy*, Dec. 1883 [1^{re} édit.]: The work is an eminently practical one and bears traces throughout of the independent labour, which has been bestowed upon it.

Prof. Kautzsch (Tübingen) in: *Theologische Literaturzeitung* 1884, No. 2: „Überall gibt sich gründliche Vertrautheit mit dem Stoff und reichliche pädagogische Erfahrung kund.“

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung in Berlin S.W.

THEODOR BENFEY, KLEINERE SCHRIFTEN.

Ausgewählt und herausgegeben von

Dr. Adalbert Bezzenberger.

*Gedruckt mit Unterstützung des Königlich preussischen Kultusministeriums und der
Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen.*

Erster Band. Erste und zweite Abtheilung in einem Bande.
Mit dem Bildnis Th. Benfey's.

1890. XL, 341 S.; 199 S. gr. 8^o. M. 22.—.

Man macht sich wohl keiner Uebertreibung oder Ungerechtigkeit schuldig, wenn man behauptet, dass Benfey alle eigentlichen Sanscritisten unter den Zeitgenossen an linguist. Urtheil, alle Linguisten in seiner besonders durch tiefgehendes Studium Paninis und der Veden genährten Kenntniss des Sanscrit übertraf. Es bleibt daher ein grosses Verdienst des Herausgebers, die vorliegenden Arbeiten der Gelehrtenwelt erhalten zu haben. Ueberall, wo Benfey mit seiner Arbeit ernstlich eingesetzt hat, hat er fördernd gewirkt. Dies gilt am meisten für das Gebiet der altindischen Philologie, wie denn auch von den beiden erschienenen Theilen der erste, das Sanscritphilologische umfassende, die wertvollsten Stücke enthält. Die durch Geist und Gelehrsamkeit auch den heutigen Leser in Staunen versetzende Abhandlung über „Indien“ zeigt, wie weit er es 1840 bereits gebracht hatte etc. (Aus „Gött. Gel.-Anzeiger“, 1890, 10.)

ORIENTALISCHE BIBLIOGRAPHIE

Unter Mitwirkung der Herren

Dr. A. Bezzenberger, Dr. Th. Gleiniger,

Dr. Joh. Müller, Dr. Richard J. H. Gottheil, Dr. H. L. Strack,

Dr. K. Vollers, Dr. Th. Ch. L. Wijnmalen,
u. A.

Herausgegeben von Dr. August Müller

Jährlich 8 Hefte. Subscriptionspreis M. 8.—. Einzelpreis M. 10.—.

Urtheile.

— On peut dire non seulement qu'elle répond à l'attente mais qu'elle la dépasse de beaucoup. Complète, exacte et méthodique sont les trois qualités que l'on pourrait exiger: il réunit les entièrement. (Le Muséon tom. IV. 5.)

„Die Bibliographie ist mit höchster Sorgfalt gearbeitet und bis jetzt ganz regelmässig erschienen. Der sehr billige Preis ermöglicht jedem Interessenten die Anschaffung.“ Prof. Wellhausen, Theol. Litt. Ztg. 1889. 3.

„Man kann fest behaupten, dass etwas Ähnliches an umfassender und erschöpfender Sorgfalt auf dem Gebiete der orient. Literatur noch niemals geboten worden ist.“ Theol. Jahresbericht VIII

Just published.

ASSYRIAN GRAMMAR

with

Paradigms, Exercises, Glossary and Bibliography

by

Friedrich Delitzsch.

Translated from the German

by

Prof. Arch^d. R. S. Kennedy, B. D.

8. XVI. 446 p. cloth 15/.

This standard work thus becomes accessible to many students who would otherwise have had to contend with the difficulties of German as well as of the cuneiform writing etc.

The Nation, July 1889.

Delitzsch's work is as simple and well arranged as is possible in the present state of Assyriology. The introduction, giving a sketch of Assyrian discovery and literature, is admirably written.

The Jewish Messenger Oct. 1889.

SYRIAC GRAMMAR

with

Bibliography, Chrestomathy and Glossary

by

Dr. Eberhard Nestle.

Translated from the *second* German edition

by

Prof. Arch^d. R. S. Kennedy, B. D.

8o. XVI. 267 p. cloth 9/.

We welcome the second edition of this excellent elementary Syriac grammar no longer in Latin, but in German and English garb. It presupposes an acquaintance on the part of the student with Hebrew. Having such preparation, beginners will find the occasionally technical language of the author intelligible, his statements correct and concise, and his conception of what form the essentials of Syriac grammar just. As an elementary book, the grammar is compact and complete. (*The Presbyterian Review, April 1889.*)

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

It is an admirable little work, the best probably for beginners, as it contains a short but complete grammar, a reading specimen with analysis, a survey of Syriac literature, a Chrestomathy consisting of the first four chapters of Genesis, and a Glossary containing all the words occurring in the Chrestomathy, and explaining all the difficult forms. *Trübner's Record.*

LITTERATURA SYRIACA

extracted from the

Syriac Grammar

by

DR. EBERH. NESTLE.

8o. IV. 66 p. 2.

— — "It is very convenient; and librarians and bibliophiles will know how to value it." Independent 3o. VIII. 88.

ARABIC GRAMMAR

with

Paradigms, Literature, Chrestomathy and Glossary

by

DR. A. SOCIN,

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEIPSIK.

8o. XVI. 294 p. cloth 7s. 6d.

Opinions and Reviews.

Dr. Socin, *therefore, deserves the sincere thanks of all engaged in Arabic tuition in this country for having recast into a new and more acceptable form the late Prof. Petermann's "Brevis linguae arabicae grammatica" which forms the 4th part of the well-known series of introductory oriental grammars styled "Porta linguarum orientalium."*

— — *Quite a novel feature is the addition of a series of well-chosen English sentences for translation into Arabic, which will be welcome to Indian Civil Service candidates at least as a stepping-stone to Arabic composition on a larger scale. The general outlines of the grammar have been preserved, but the hand of a judicious reviser is visible almost on every page — — room has been made for a short chapter on syntax, which gives, in the narrow space of 22 pages a clear and intelligible account of Arabic tenses, the government of verb and noun, and simple and compound sentences.*

This will no doubt be highly appreciated by the student, and assist him in mastering the contents of such standard grammars as Wright's, Caspari's or De Sacy's. Athenaeum March 19. 86.

Williams & Norgate, 14, Henrietta Str., Cov. Garden, London; and 20, South Frederick Str., Edinburgh.—B. Westermann & Co., 812, Broadway, New York.

PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIU

ELEMENTA LINGUARUM: Hebraicae, Phoeniciae, Biblico-Aramaicae, Samaritanae, Targumicae, Talmudicae, Syriacae, Arabicae, Aethiopicae, Assyriacae Aegyptiacae, Copticae, Armeniacae, Persicae, Turcicae, aliarum studiis academicis accommodaverunt

J. H. Petermann, H. L. Strack, E. Nestle, A. Socin, F. Prätorius, Ad. Merx, Aug. Müller, Frdr. Delitzsch, C. Salemann, V. Shukovski, Th. Nöldeke, G. Steindorff, G. Jacob, G. Dalman, alii.

Die *Porta linguarum orientalium*, begonnen von Prof. Dr. J. H. Petermann, seit 1884 von Prof. D. H. L. Strack in Berlin unter Mitwirkung der hervorragendsten Fachmänner fortgesetzt, bezw. neuherausgegeben, soll als zweckmässigstes

== Hilfsmittel für das Studium der orientalischen Sprachen ==

zunächst die erste Einführung in dasselbe vermitteln, und zwar unter gleichzeitiger Rücksichtnahme auf den Gebrauch bei akademischen Vorlesungen sowie für das Selbststudium.

Die **Grammatiken** bieten den besonderen Vorzug, dass sie dem Anfänger alles zur Kenntnis der einzelnen Sprache Erforderliche in Einem Buche bieten, nämlich:

1. Eine kurze, aber vollständige Grammatik, in welcher, soweit thunlich, für die verschiedenen Sprachen ein gleicher Lehrgang befolgt und, bei den semitischen Sprachen, auf Übereinstimmung und Abweichung hingewiesen wird. Seit dem Jahre 1885 enthält jeder neu erscheinende Band auch einen Abriss der Syntax.

2. Eine Chrestomathie. Zur Sprachvergleichung und um eine sonst nötige *versio interlinearis* zu vermeiden, sind in sieben Teilen die vier ersten Kapitel der Genesis nach den alten Übersetzungen an den Anfang gestellt. — In einigen Teilen werden Leseübungen und aus einzelnen Formen bestehende Übungsstücke der eigentlichen Chrestomathie vorangeschickt.

3. Ein Wörterbuch, welches die in der Grammatik und im Übungsbuche vorkommenden Wörter erklärt.

4. Eine Litteratur, welche, sorgfältig zusammengestellt, Anregung zu tiefer eindringender Arbeit gibt.

Wo das Bedürfnis vorliegt, bringt die *Porta* auch für sich abgeschlossene **Chrestomathieen**.

Bis jetzt weist die *Porta*

☞ folgende 22 Bände auf: ☞ (siehe umstehend)

Neu 1890: Noeldeke u. Mueller, *Delectus veterum Carminum Arabicorum*. M. 7.—.

Strack, *hebräische Grammatik* 3. Auflage. M. 3.60.

Delectus Veterum Carminum

Arabicorum, carmina selecta et edidit Th. Nodding. Glossarium confect. A. Maeder. Pars XIII. 189. M. 7.—.

Arabische Grammatik, mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u. Glossar v. A. Soehn. (Vol. IV). Zweit. Auflage. 1889. M. 6.—.

Arabische Bibel-Chrestomathie, herausgegeben u. mit einem Glossar versehen von Georg Jacob. (Vol. IXa). 1888. M. 2.25.

Assyrische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Übungsstücken, Glossar u. Litteratur von Friedr. Delitzsch. (Vol. Xa). 1889. M. 12.—.

Aethiopische Grammatik, mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von Franz Prätorius. (Vol. VIIb). 1886. M. 6.—.

Grammatica chaldaica, litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit J. H. Petermann. Editio secunda emendata. (Vol. II). M. 4.—.

Hebräische Grammatik m. Übungsbuch von H. L. Strack. Dritte, neubearb. Aufl. (Vol. Ia). 1890. geb. M. 4.—.

Grammaire hébraïque avec Paradigmes, Exercices de lecture, Chrestomathie et Bibliogr. par H. L. Strack. (Vol. Ic). 1886. M. 3.25.

Persische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u. Glossar v. C. Salemann u. V. Shukovski. (Vol. XII). 1889. M. 7.—.

Syrische Grammatik mit Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von Eb. Nestle. Zweite verm. u. verbess. Auflage. (Vol. Va). 1888. M. 7.—.

Grammatica Samaritana, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit J. H. Petermann. (Vol. III). M. 4.—.

Türkische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie u. Glossar von August Müller. (Vol. XI). 1889. M. 8.—.

Arabic Grammar, Paradigms, Literature, Chrestomathy and Glossary by A. Soehn. (Vol. IVb). 1885. M. 7.—.

Arabic Bible-Chrestomathy, with a Glossary, edited by George Jacob. (Vol. IXb). 1888. M. 2.40.

Assyrian Grammar with Paradigms, Chrestomathy, Glossary and Literature by Friedr. Delitzsch. (Vol. Xb). 1889. M. 14.—.

Grammatica aethiopica cum Paradigm., Litteratura, Chrestomathia et Glossario scripsit Franz Prätorius. (Vol. VIIa). 1886. M. 6.—.

Grammatica armeniaca, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit J. H. Petermann. (Vol. VI). M. 4.—.

Chrestomathia targumica edidit adnotat. critica et glossario instruxit Ad. Merx. (Vol. VIII). 1888. M. 7.50.

Hebrew Grammar with Read. book, Exercises, Literat. and Vocab. by H. L. Strack, second enl. ed. (Vol. Ib). 1889. M. 4.50.

Персидская Грамматика. Составили К. Залеманъ и В. Жуковскій. 1890. Preis geb. M. 4.—.

Syriac Grammar with Bibliography, Chrestomathy and Glossary by Eb. Nestle. (Vol. Vb). 1889. M. 8.—.

Lehrbuch der Neuhebräischen Sprache u. Litteratur von H. L. Strack u. C. Siegfried. (Ergänzungsband). 1884. M. 3.—.

Die Erweiterung der Sammlung und die Gewinnung neuer hervorragender Mitarbeiter sind Gegenstand unausgesetzter Bemühungen des Herausgebers und der unterzeichneten Verlagsbuchhandlung.

Das wichtige Unternehmen sei hiermit Allen, welche für Sprachen und Litteratur des Orients ein Interesse haben, angelegentlichst empfohlen.

Berlin, September 1890. **H. Reuther's Verlagsbuchhandlung.**

== Zu beziehen durch jede Buchhandlung. ==

- Williams (T. S.)** Modern German and English Conversations and Elementary Phrases, the German revised and corrected by A. Kokemueller. 21st enlarged and improved Edition. 12mo. cloth 3s
- Williams (T. S.) and C. Cruse.** German and English Commercial Correspondence. A Collection of Modern Mercantile Letters in German and English, with their Translation on opposite pages. 2nd Edition. 12mo. cloth 4s 6d
- Hickie (W. J.)** Easy German Reading-Book. With Outline of GRAMMAR, etc. 8vo. cloth 1s 6d
- Apel (H.)** German Prose Stories for Beginners (including Lessing's Prose Fables), with an interlinear Translation in the natural order of Construction. 2nd Edition. 12mo. cloth 2s 6d
-

German Classics for English Schools, with Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. cloth.

- Grimm's Hausmärchen**, by W. J. Hickie 2s
- Schiller's Lied von der Glocke** (The Song of the Bell), and other Poems and Ballads, by M. Förster 2s
- **Minor Poems.** By Arthur P. Vernon 2s
- **Maria Stuart**, by Moritz Förster 2s 6d
- Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea**, by M. Förster 2s 6d
- **Iphigenie auf Tauris.** With Notes by H. Attwell. 2s
- **Egmont.** By H. Apel 2s 6d
- Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm**, by Schmidt 2s 6d
- ——— **Emilia Galotti.** By G. Hein 2s
- Chamisso's Peter Schlemihl**, by M. Förster 2s
- Andersen (H. C.) Bilderbuch ohne Bilder**, by Beck 2s
- Nieritz. Die Waise**, a Tale, by Otte 2s
- Hauff's Märchen.** A Selection, by A. Hoare 3s 6d
-

- Fouque's Undine, Sintram, Aslauga's Ritter, die beiden Hauptleute.** 4 vols. in 1. 8vo. cloth 5s
- Undine. 1s 6d; cloth, 2s. Aslauga. 1s 6d; cloth, 2s
- Sintram. 2s 6d; cloth, 3s. Hauptleute. 1s 6d; cloth, 2s

Latin, Greek, etc.

- Cæsar de Bello Gallico.** Lib. I. Edited with Introduction, Notes and Maps, by ALEXANDER M. BELL, M.A. Ball. Coll., Oxon. Crown 8vo. cloth 2s 6d
- Euripides' Medea.** The Greek Text, with Introduction and Explanatory Notes for Schools, by J. H. Hogan. 8vo. cloth 3s 6d
- **Ion.** Greek Text, with Notes for Beginners, Introduction and Questions for Examination, by the Rev. Charles Badham, D.D. 2nd Edition. 8vo. 3s 6d
- Platonis Philebus.** With Introduction and Notes by Dr. C. Badham. 2nd Edition, considerably augmented. 8vo. cloth 4s
- Dr. D. Zompolides.** A Course of Modern Greek, or the Greek Language of the Present Day. I. The Elementary Method. Crown 8vo. 5s
-

- Kiepert New Atlas Antiquus.** Maps of the Ancient World, for Schools and Colleges. 6th Edition. With a complete Geographical Index. Folio, boards 7s 6d
- Kampen.** 15 Maps to illustrate Cæsar's De Bello Gallico. 15 coloured Maps. 4to. cloth 3s 6d
-

Spanish.

- Harvey (W. F.) Practical Spanish Manual.** Grammar, Exercises, Reading Lessons, &c. Crown 8vo. cloth 4s 6d
-

Italian.

- Volpe (Cav. G.) Eton Italian Grammar,** for the use of Eton College. Including Exercises and Examples. New Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth (Key, 1s) 4s 6d
- Racconti Storici e Novelle Morali.** Edited, for the use of Italian Students, by G. Christison. 12th Edition. 18mo. cloth 1s 6d
- Rossetti.** Exercises for securing Idiomatic Italian, by means of Literal Translations from the English by Maria F. Rossetti. 12mo. cloth 3s 6d
- **Aneddoti Italiani.** One Hundred Italian Anecdotes, selected from "Il Compagno del Passeggio."